Metal Cutting Technology training handbook

This handbook will serve as your main source of information throughout the Sandvik Coromant metal cutting training and may also be used as reference in your future endeavors.

Train with us

Deepen and broaden your knowledge with our training programs. We offer basic to advanced training at our Centers worldwide, allowing you to combine theory with practice using state of the art equipment and machines.

Visit sandvik.coromant.com to find activity schedules and register.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Turning</strong></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Theory</td>
<td>A 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selection procedure</td>
<td>A 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System overview</td>
<td>A 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Choice of inserts</td>
<td>A 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Choice of tools</td>
<td>A 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- External</td>
<td>A 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Internal</td>
<td>A 64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Code keys</td>
<td>A 68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Troubleshooting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Parting &amp; Grooving</strong></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Theory</td>
<td>B 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selection procedure</td>
<td>B 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System overview</td>
<td>B 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parting &amp; grooving - how to apply</td>
<td>B 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Parting off</td>
<td>B 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- General grooving</td>
<td>B 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Circlip grooving</td>
<td>B 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Face grooving</td>
<td>B 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Profiling</td>
<td>B 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Turning</td>
<td>B 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Undercutting</td>
<td>B 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Troubleshooting</td>
<td>B 37</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Threading</strong></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Theory</td>
<td>C 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selection procedure</td>
<td>C 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System overview</td>
<td>C 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How to apply</td>
<td>C 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Troubleshooting</td>
<td>C 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tapping</td>
<td>C 28</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Milling</strong></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Theory</td>
<td>D 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selection procedure</td>
<td>D 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System overview</td>
<td>D 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Choice of insert – how to apply</td>
<td>D 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Choice of tools – how to apply</td>
<td>D 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Troubleshooting</td>
<td>D 36</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Drilling</strong></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Theory</td>
<td>E 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selection procedure</td>
<td>E 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System overview</td>
<td>E 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How to apply</td>
<td>E 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hole quality and tolerances</td>
<td>E 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Troubleshooting</td>
<td>E 43</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Boring</strong></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Theory</td>
<td>F 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selection procedure</td>
<td>F 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System overview</td>
<td>F 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Choice of tools</td>
<td>F 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How to apply</td>
<td>F 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Troubleshooting</td>
<td>F 27</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Tool holding</strong></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>History and background</td>
<td>G 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Why modular tooling</td>
<td>G 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turning centers</td>
<td>G 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Machining centers</td>
<td>G 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multi-task machines</td>
<td>G 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chucks</td>
<td>G 35</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Machinability</strong></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Workpiece materials</td>
<td>H 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manufacture of cemented carbide</td>
<td>H 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The cutting edge</td>
<td>H 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cutting tool materials</td>
<td>H 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tool wear &amp; maintenance</td>
<td>H 52</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Other information</strong></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Machining economy</td>
<td>H 63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISO 13399 - The industry standard</td>
<td>H 78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formulas and definitions</td>
<td>H 81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E-learning</td>
<td>H 92</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Turning

Turning generates cylindrical and rounded forms with a single-point tool. In most cases the tool is stationary with the workpiece rotating.

• Theory A 4
• Selection procedure A 12
• System overview A 16
• Choice of inserts – how to apply A 22
• Choice of tools – how to apply A 49
  - External A 54
  - Internal
• Code keys A 64
• Troubleshooting A 68
General turning operations

Turning is the combination of two movements – rotation of the workpiece and feed movement of the tool.

The feed movement of the tool can be along the axis of the workpiece, which means the diameter of the part will be turned down to a smaller size. Alternatively, the tool can be fed towards the center (facing off) at the end of the part.

Often feeds are combinations of these two directions, resulting in tapered or radius surfaces.

Three common turning operations:
- Longitudinal turning
- Facing
- Profiling
Definitions of terms

Spindle speed

The spindle speed rpm (revolution per minute) is the rotation of the chuck and workpiece.

Cutting speed

The cutting speed is the surface speed, m/min (ft/min), at which the tool moves along the workpiece in feet (meters) per minute.

Definition of cutting speed

The definition of cutting speed \( v_c \) as the result of the diameter, pi \( \pi \) and the spindle speed \( n \) in the revolutions per minute (rpm). The circumference (C) is the distance the cutting edge moves in a revolution.

\[
v_c = \frac{\pi \times D_m \times n}{1000} \quad \text{m/min}
\]

\[
v_c = \frac{\pi \times D_m \times n}{12} \quad \text{ft/min}
\]
Calculation of the circumference (C)

- Circumference = $\pi$ x diameter
- $\pi$ (pi) = 3.14

Example:

$D_{m2} = 100$ mm (3.937 inch)

\[C = 3.14 \times 100 = 314\text{ mm}\]

\[C = 3.14 \times 3.937 = 12.362\text{ inch}\]

$D_{m1} = 50$ mm (1.969 inch)

\[C = 3.14 \times 50 = 157\text{ mm}\]

\[C = 3.14 \times 1.969 = 6.183\text{ inch}\]

Example of cutting speed calculation

The cutting speed differs depending on the workpiece diameter.

**Given:**

- Spindle speed, $n = 2000$ rpm
- Diameter, $D_{m1} = 50$ mm (1.969 inch)
- Diameter, $D_{m2} = 80$ mm (3.150 inch)

**Metric**

\[v_c = \frac{\pi \times D_{m} \times n}{1000}\text{ m/min}\]

\[v_{c1} = \frac{3.14 \times 50 \times 2000}{1000} = 314\text{ m/min}\]

\[v_{c2} = \frac{3.14 \times 80 \times 2000}{1000} = 502\text{ m/min}\]

**Inch**

\[v_c = \frac{\pi \times D_{m} \times n}{12}\text{ ft/min}\]

\[v_{c1} = \frac{3.14 \times 1.969 \times 2000}{12} = 1030\text{ ft/min}\]

\[v_{c2} = \frac{3.14 \times 3.150 \times 2000}{12} = 1649\text{ ft/min}\]
Definitions of terms

- \( n \) = spindle speed (rpm)
- \( v_c \) = cutting speed m/min (ft/min)
- \( f_n \) = cutting feed mm/r (inch/r)
- \( a_p \) = depth of cut mm (inch)
- KAPR = entering angle
- PSIR = lead angle

Spindle speed

The workpiece rotates in the lathe, with a certain spindle speed \((n)\), at a certain number of revolutions per minute (rpm).

Surface/cutting speed

The cutting speed \((v_c)\) in m/min (ft/min) at which the periphery of the cut workpiece diameter passes the cutting edge.

Feed

The cutting feed \((f_n)\) in mm/r (inch/r) is the movement of the tool in relation to the revolving workpiece. This is a key value in determining the quality of the surface being machined and for ensuring that the chip formation is within the scope of the tool geometry. This value influences, not only how thick the chip is, but also how the chip forms against the insert geometry.

Depth of cut

The cutting depth \((a_p)\) in mm (inch) is half of the difference between the un-cut and cut diameter of the workpiece. The cutting depth is always measured at right angles to the feed direction of the tool.

Entering angle KAPR, lead angle PSIR

The cutting edge approach to the workpiece is expressed through the entering angle (KAPR), which is the angle between the cutting edge and the direction of feed. It can also be expressed as the lead angle (PSIR), the angle between the cutting edge and the workpiece plane. The entering angle is important in the basic selection of the correct turning tool for an operation.
Calculating cutting data

Cutting speed

Example of how to calculate the spindle speed \( n \) from cutting speed \( v_c \).

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Given:} \\
\text{Cutting speed, } v_c &= 400 \text{ m/min (1312 ft/min)} \\
\text{Diameter } D_m &= 100 \text{ mm (3.937 inch)}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Metric} & \quad n = \frac{v_c \times 1000}{\pi \times D_m} \quad \text{r/min} \\
& \quad n = \frac{400 \times 1000}{3.14 \times 100} = 1274 \text{ r/min} \\
\text{Inch} & \quad n = \frac{v_c \times 12}{\pi \times D_m} \quad \text{r/min} \\
& \quad n = \frac{1312 \times 12}{3.14 \times 3.937} = 1274 \text{ r/min}
\end{align*}
\]

Inclination and rake angles

Rake angle

The rake angle gamma (GAMO) is a measurement of the edge in relation to the cut. The rake angle of the insert itself is usually positive and the clearance face is in the form of a radius, chamfer or land and affects tool strength, power consumption, finishing ability of the tool, vibration tendency and chip formation.

Inclination angle

The inclination angle lambda (LAMS) is the angle the insert is mounted in the tool holder. When mounted in the tool holder, the insert geometry and inclination in the tool holder will determine the resulting cutting angle with which the cutting edge cuts.
Cutting depth and chip formation

The cutting depth \((a_p)\) is the length the edge goes into the workpiece. Chip formation varies with depth of cut, entering (lead) angle, feed, material and insert geometry.

Feed rate and the effective cutting edge length

Feed rate
The feed rate \((f_n)\) is the distance the edge moves along the cut per revolution.

Cutting edge length
The effective cutting edge length \((LE)\) relates to cutting depth and entering (lead) angle.
Insert shape selection, entering angle (lead angle) and chip thickness

The entering angle KAPR (lead angle PSIR), of the tool and the nose radius RE of the insert effect the chip formation, in that the chip cross-section changes. The chip thickness is reduced and the width increases with a smaller entering angle or larger lead angle. The direction of chip flow is also changed.

Entering angle KAPR (Lead angle PSIR)
- Is defined by the holder tip seat in combination with insert shape selected.

Maximum chip thickness $h_{ex}$
- Reduces relative to the feed rate as the entering angle reduces (lead angle increases).

KAPR = 45°
PSIR = 45°
$h_{ex} \approx f_n \times 0.71$

Possible entering (lead) angle positions for insert shapes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Insert Shape</th>
<th>Entering Angle KAPR</th>
<th>Lead Angle PSIR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CNMG</td>
<td>95°</td>
<td>-5°</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DNMG</td>
<td>107.5°, 93°, 62.5°</td>
<td>-17.5°, -3°, 27.5°</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WNMG</td>
<td>95°</td>
<td>-5°</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SNMG</td>
<td>45°, 75°</td>
<td>45°, 15°</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RCMT</td>
<td>Variable</td>
<td>Variable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TNMG</td>
<td>93°, 91°, 60°</td>
<td>-3°, -1°, 30°</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VNMG</td>
<td>117.5°, 107.5°, 72.5°</td>
<td>-27.5°, -17.5°, 17.5°</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The effect of entering angle (lead angle) on chip thickness

Maximum chip thickness $h_{ex}$ reduces relative to the feed rate as the entering angle reduces (lead angle increases).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entering angle KAPR Lead angle PSIR</th>
<th>95° -5°</th>
<th>75° 15°</th>
<th>60° 30°</th>
<th>45° 45°</th>
<th>90° min 0° max</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chip thickness compared to feed, mm (inch)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.96</td>
<td>0.87</td>
<td>0.71</td>
<td>Variable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contact length $l_a$, mm (inch) at $a_p$, 2 mm (.079 inch)</td>
<td>2 (.079)</td>
<td>2.08 (.082)</td>
<td>2.3 (.091)</td>
<td>2.82 (.111)</td>
<td>Variable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Calculating power consumption

The net power ($P_c$) required for metal cutting is mainly of interest when roughing, where it is essential to ensure that the machine has sufficient power for the operation and is measured in kW and HP. The efficiency factor of the machine is also of great importance.

For information about the $k_c$ value, see page H 16.

\[ P_c = \frac{v_c \times a_p \times f_n \times k_c}{60 \times 10^3} \text{ kW} \]

\[ P_c = \frac{v_c \times a_p \times f_n \times k_c}{33 \times 10^3} \text{ HP} \]
Selection procedure

Production planning process

1. Component
   - Dimension and type of operation

2. Machine
   - Workpiece material and quantity
   - Machine parameters

3. Choice of tool
   - Type of turning tool:
     - External/internal
     - Longitudinal
     - Facing
     - Profiling

4. How to apply
   - Cutting data, tool path, etc.

5. Troubleshooting
   - Remedies and solutions
1. Component and the workpiece material
Parameters to be considered

Component
- Analyze the dimensions and quality demands of the surface to be machined
- Type of operation (longitudinal, facing and profiling)
- External, internal
- Roughing, medium or finishing
- Tool paths
- Number of passes
- Tolerances.

Material
- Machinability
- Cast or pre-machined
- Chip breaking
- Hardness
- Alloy elements.

2. Machine parameters
Condition of the machine

Some important machine considerations:
- Stability, power and torque, especially for larger diameters
- Component clamping
- Tool position
- Tool changing times/number of tools in turret
- Spindle speed (rpm) limitations, bar feed magazine
- Sub spindle, or tail stock available?
- Use all possible support
- Easy to program
- Cutting fluid pressure.
3. Choice of tools

General application - Turning with rhombic inserts

**Advantages**
- Operational versatility
- Large entering angle
- For turning and facing
- Good roughing strength.

**Disadvantages**
- Can cause vibration when turning slender components.

Turning with wiper inserts

**Advantages**
- Increase feed and gain productivity
- Use normal feed rate and gain surface quality
- Productivity booster.

**Disadvantages**
- In back turning and profiling the wiper edge is not effective.

Coromant unique Turning concepts

**Advantages**
- Increased cutting data in profiling
- Increased ability to hold tolerance.

**Advantages**
- Multiple edge solution
- Chip control and predictable tool life.

**Advantages**
- Turning in all directions
- Efficient and productive turning.
4. How to apply

Important application considerations

The tool path has a significant impact on the machining process.

It influences:
- Chip control
- Insert wear
- Surface quality
- Tool life.

In practice, the tool holder, insert geometry, grade, workpiece material and tool path influences the cycle time and productivity considerably.

5. Troubleshooting

Some areas to consider

Insert clearance angle
• Use positive inserts for lower cutting forces in general and for internal turning.

Chip breaking
• Optimize the chip breaking by changing the depth of cut, the feed or the insert geometry.

Nose radius
• The depth of cut should be no less than the nose radius (RE).

Insert wear
• Make sure that the flank wear does not exceed the general recommendation of 0.5 mm (.020 inch).
External Turning - negative inserts

1. Longitudinal turning
2. Profiling
3. Facing

Overview of tool holders

- Negative insert
- Rigid clamping system
- Modular/shank tools.

- Negative insert
- Lever clamping system
- Modular/shank tools.

- Negative/positive inserts
- All clamping systems
- Cutting heads
- Modular/shank tools.

- Negative inserts
- Lever clamping system
- Precision coolant
- Modular/shank tools.
External Turning - positive inserts

1. Longitudinal turning
2. Profiling
3. Facing

Overview of tool holders

• Positive insert
• Screw clamping system
• Modular/shank tools
• Precision coolant.

• Positive insert
• Screw clamping system
• iLock™ interface
• Modular/shank tools.

• Negative/positive insert
• All clamping systems
• Cutting heads
• Modular/shank tools.

• Positive insert
• Screw clamping system
• Modular/shank tools.
System overview

Internal turning, negative/positive inserts

Overview of internal tool holders

- Negative/positive inserts
- Dampened boring bars
- Boring bars

- Positive insert
- Screw clamping system
- Cutting heads
- Modular/boring bars
- Precision coolant.

- Negative insert
- Rigid clamping system
- Modular/boring bars.

- Negative insert
- Lever clamping system
- Modular/boring bars.

- Dampened boring bars
- Boring bars.
Tools for small part machining

Overview of tool holders

External tools

• Positive insert
• Screw clamping system
• Shank tools
• Precision coolant.

• Quick change tools
• Positive insert
• Screw clamping system.

Internal tools

• Positive insert
• Screw clamping system
• Precision coolant.

• Positive insert
• Screw clamping system.

• Positive insert
• Carbide rods
• Machine adapted bars.

1. External turning
2. External turning
   (Sliding head machines)
3. Internal turning
   (Exchangeable inserts)
4. Internal turning
5. Internal turning
   (Carbide rods)
Overview of insert clamping systems

### Clamping of negative basic-shape inserts

- **Rigid clamping system**
  - Angle: 0°
- **Lever clamping system**

### Clamping of positive basic-shape inserts

- **Screw clamping system**
  - Angle: 7°
- **Screw clamping system**
  - Angle: 11°

### Clamping of positive iLock™ inserts

- **Screw clamping system**
  - Angle: 5°/7°
Modern insert clamping for turning tools

Rigid clamping

- Negative inserts
- Excellent clamping
- Easy indexing.

Lever clamping

- Negative inserts
- Free chip flow
- Easy indexing.

Screw clamping

- Positive inserts
- Secure clamping of the insert
- Free chip flow.

Screw clamping system, iLock™

- Positive inserts
- Very secure clamping
- High accuracy.
Choice of inserts

- Basic factors  A 23
- Insert geometries  A 31
- Insert grades  A 38
- Insert shape, size, nose radius  A 41
- Cutting data effect on tool life  A 47
The complex world of metal cutting

Getting metal cutting processes right means knowing the workpiece material, then choosing the correct insert geometry and grade to suit the specific application.

- The interaction between an optimized insert geometry and grade for a certain workpiece material is the key to successful machining.
- These three main basic factors must be carefully considered and adapted for the machining operation in question.
- The knowledge and understanding of how to work with and employ these factors is of vital importance.

The machining starts at the cutting edge

Typical chip breaking sequences with high speed imaging
Six material groups

In the metal cutting industry there is an incredibly broad range of component designs made from different materials. Each material has its own unique characteristics influenced by the alloying elements, heat treatment, hardness, etc. This strongly influences the selection of cutting tool geometry, grade and cutting data.

Workpiece material groups

- **ISO P** – Steel is the largest material group in the metal cutting area, ranging from unalloyed to high-alloyed material including steel castings and ferritic and martensitic stainless steels. The machinability is normally good, but differs a lot depending on material hardness, carbon content, etc.

- **ISO M** – Stainless steels are materials alloyed with a minimum of 12% chromium; other alloys are, e.g., nickel and molybdenum. Different conditions such as ferritic, martensitic, austenitic and austenitic-ferritic (duplex), makes this an extensive material group. Common for all these types are that they expose cutting edges to a great deal of heat, notch wear and built-up edge.
• **ISO K** – Cast iron is, contrary to steel, a short-chipping type of material. Gray cast iron (GCI) and malleable cast irons (MCI) are quite easy to machine, while nodular cast iron (NCI), compacted graphite iron (CGI) and austempered cast iron (ADI) are more difficult. All cast irons contain silicon carbide (SiC) which is very abrasive to the cutting edge.

• **ISO N** – Non-ferrous metals are softer types of metals such as aluminum, copper, brass, etc. Aluminum with a silicon content (Si) of 13% is very abrasive. Generally high cutting speeds and long tool life can be expected for inserts with sharp edges.

• **ISO S** – Heat Resistant Super Alloys include a great number of high-alloyed iron, nickel, cobalt and titanium-based materials. They are sticky, create built-up edge, workharden and generate heat, very similar to the ISO M-area, but they are much more difficult to cut, leading to shorter tool life for the cutting edges.

• **ISO H** – This group covers steels with a hardness between 45-65 HRc and also chilled cast iron around 400-600 HB. The hardness makes them all difficult to machine. The materials generate heat during cutting and are very abrasive to the cutting edge.
Cutting forces

Another expression of the differences in the six material groups is through the force ($F_T$) needed to shear off a specific chip cross-section in certain conditions.

This value, the specific cutting force value ($k_c$), is indicated for various types of workpiece materials and used in the calculation of how much power is needed for an operation.

$k_{c1}$ = specific cutting force for average chip thickness 1 mm (.039 inch).

- **P Steel**
  - $k_{c1}$ variation of: 1500-3100 N/mm$^2$ (217,500-449,500 lbs/inch$^2$)

- **M Stainless steel**
  - $k_{c1}$ variation of: 1800-2850 N/mm$^2$ (261,000-413,250 lbs/inch$^2$)

- **K Cast iron**
  - $k_{c1}$ variation of: 790-1350 N/mm$^2$. (114,550-195,750 lbs/inch$^2$)
• Aluminum materials have a $k_{c1}$ variation of:
  350-1350 N/mm$^2$
  (50,750-195,750 lbs/inch$^2$)

• Heat resistant super alloys materials have a $k_{c1}$ variation of:
  2400-3100 N/mm$^2$
  (348,000-449,500 lbs/inch$^2$) for HRSA
  1300-1400 N/mm$^2$
  (188,500-203,000 lbs/inch$^2$) for titanium alloys

• Hardened steel materials have a $k_{c1}$ variation of:
  2550 – 4870 N/mm$^2$
  (369,750-706,150 lbs/inch$^2$)
Chip formation

There are three patterns for a chip to break after it has been cut.

**Self-breaking**

Self-breaking, where the material, in combination with how the chip is curved, leads to the chips being parted as they come off the insert.

**Against the tool**

Chips breaking against the tool, where the chip curves around until it makes contact with the clearance face of the insert or tool holder, and the resulting strain snaps it. Although often accepted, this method can in some cases lead to chip hammering, where the chip damages the insert.

**Against the workpiece**

Chips breaking against the workpiece, where the chip snaps when making contact with the surface that has just been machined. This type of chip breaking is usually not suitable in applications where a good surface finish is needed, because of possible damage caused to the component.
Chip formation varies with different parameters

Chip formation varies with depth of cut, feed, material and tool geometry.

Insert rake angle

The rake angle (γ) gamma (GAMO) is a measurement of the edge in relation to the cut. This can be either negative or positive tools. Based on this, there are negative and positive inserts, where the clearance angles are either zero or several degrees plus. This determines how the insert can be tilted in the tool holder, giving rise to a negative or positive cutting action.

Positive cutting action

Negative cutting action
Insert rake angle

There is a distinction in cutting edge geometry between negative and positive insert geometry:

- A negative insert has a wedge angle of 90° seen in a cross-section of the basic shape of the cutting edge.
- A positive insert has a wedge angle of less than 90°.

The negative insert has to be inclined negatively in the tool holder so as to provide a clearance angle tangential to the workpiece while the positive insert has this clearance built in.

**Negative style**

- Double/single sided
- Edge strength
- Zero clearance
- External/internal machining
- Heavy cutting conditions.

**Positive style**

- Single sided
- Low cutting forces
- Side clearance
- Internal/external machining
- Slender shafts, small bores.

**Insert geometries**

Metal cutting is very much the science of removing chips from the workpiece material in the right way. Chips have to be shaped and broken off into lengths that are manageable in the machine.

- In milling and drilling a lot of parameters influence the chip formation compared to turning.
- Turning is a single-cut operation with a stationary tool and a rotating workpiece.
- The insert rake angle, geometry and feed play an important role in the chip formation process.
- Removing heat from the cutting zone through the chip (80%) is a key issue.
The design of a modern insert

Definitions of terms and geometry design

Nose radius edge design

Main cutting edge design

Macro geometry with chip breaker

Geometry for small cutting depths

0.25 mm (.010")
20°
5°

• Cutting edge reinforcement 0.25 mm (.010")
• Rake angle 20°
• Primary land 5°

The reinforcement of the cutting edge

The Edge Roundness (ER) treatment gives the cutting edge the final micro-geometry.

• ER-treatment is done before coating, and gives the final shape of the cutting edge (micro-geometry).

• The relationship between W/H is what makes inserts suitable for different applications.
The working area of an insert geometry

A chip breaking diagram for an insert geometry is defined by acceptable chip breaking for feed and depth of cut.

- Cutting depth ($a_p$) and feed ($f_n$) must be adapted to the chipbreaking area of the geometry to get acceptable chip control.
- Chip breaking which is too hard can lead to insert breakage.
- Chips which are too long can lead to disturbances in the machining process and bad surface finish.

Three main methods in Turning

\[
\begin{align*}
R &= \text{Roughing} \\
M &= \text{Medium machining} \\
F &= \text{Finishing}
\end{align*}
\]

Roughing
- Maximum metal removal rate and/or severe conditions
- Large cutting depth and feed rate combinations
- High cutting forces.

Medium machining
- Most applications – general purpose
- Medium operations to light roughing
- Wide range of cutting depth and feed rate combinations.

Finishing
- Small cutting depths and low feed rates
- Low cutting forces.
Chip breaking areas

Turning of low alloy steel

Roughing – R
High depth of cut and feed rate combinations. Operations requiring the highest edge security.

Medium – M
Medium operations to light roughing. Wide range of depth of cut and feed rate combinations.

Finishing – F
Operations at light depths of cut and low feed rates. Operations requiring low cutting forces.

Chip breaking diagram

Roughing of steel
CMC 02.1

Cutting depth, \( a_p \) mm (inch)

Chip breaking area:

- \( a_p = 5.0 \ (1.0 - 7.5) \) mm
- \( f_n = 0.5 \ (0.25 - 0.7) \) mm/r
- \( a_p = 0.197 \ (0.039 - 0.295) \) inch
- \( f_n = 0.020 \ (0.010 - 0.028) \) inch/r

The area marked in red indicates the area which gives acceptable chip breaking.
Medium machining of steel CMC 02.1

Chip breaking area:

\[ a_p = 3.0 \ (0.5 \ - \ 5.5) \ \text{mm} \]
\[ f_n = 0.3 \ (0.15 \ - \ 0.5) \ \text{mm/r} \]
\[ a_p = 0.118 \ (0.020 \ - \ 0.217) \ \text{inch} \]
\[ f_n = 0.012 \ (0.006 \ - \ 0.020) \ \text{inch/r} \]

Cutting depth, \( a_p \) mm (inch)

Feed, \( f_n \) mm/r (inch/r)

Finishing of steel CMC 02.1

Chip breaking area:

\[ a_p = 0.4 \ (0.25 \ - \ 1.5) \ \text{mm} \]
\[ f_n = 0.15 \ (0.07 \ - \ 0.3) \ \text{mm/r} \]
\[ a_p = 0.016 \ (0.010 \ - \ 0.059) \ \text{inch} \]
\[ f_n = 0.006 \ (0.003 \ - \ 0.012) \ \text{inch/r} \]

Cutting depth, \( a_p \) mm (inch)

Feed, \( f_n \) mm/r (inch/r)
Selection of inserts

Considerations when selecting inserts

It is important to select the correct insert size, insert shape, geometry and insert nose radius to achieve good chip control.

- Select the largest possible point angle on the insert for strength and economy.
- Select the largest possible nose radius for insert strength.
- Select a smaller nose radius if there is a tendency for vibration.

L = cutting edge length (insert size)
RE = nose radius

Dedicated inserts for the ISO P, M, K and S area

The different micro and macro-geometries are adapted to the various requirements in the applications.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Workpiece material</th>
<th>Finishing</th>
<th>Medium</th>
<th>Roughing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>0.07 mm (.003&quot;)</td>
<td>0.2 mm (.008&quot;)</td>
<td>0.32 mm (.013&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>0.29 mm (.012&quot;)</td>
<td>0.32 mm (.013&quot;)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K</td>
<td>0.1 mm (.004&quot;)</td>
<td>0.25 mm (.010&quot;)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>0.12 mm (.005&quot;)</td>
<td>0.25 mm (.010&quot;)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

L= cutting edge length (insert size)
RE = nose radius
Geometry description

Every insert has a working area with optimized chip control.

A geometry description and application information are also available.

**Geometry working area**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Geometry working area</th>
<th>Geometry description</th>
<th>Application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-PM</td>
<td>CNMG 432-PM (CNMG 12 04 08-PM)</td>
<td>-PM – for medium turning with broad capability for steel.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Feed ($f_n$): 0.1 – 0.65 mm/r (.004 – .026 inch/r).
- Depth of cut ($a_p$): 0.4 – 8.6 mm (.016 – .339 inch).
- Operations: turning, facing and profiling.
- Advantages: all-purpose, reliable, with problem-free machining.
- Components: axles, shafts, hubs, gears, etc.
- Limitations: depth of cut and feed, risk of overloading the cutting edge.
- General recommendations: Combine with a wear resistant grade for best productivity.
- Possible optimization: geometry WMX.

**From universal to optimized turning inserts**

**Universal inserts**

- Universal geometry
- Optimizing with grades
- Performance compromised.

**Optimized inserts**

- Dedicated geometries and grades
- Optimized performance according to workpiece material and machinability.
Inserts for general turning

The choice of different insert concepts

Negative, double/single-sided inserts

- A negative insert has a wedge angle of 90° seen in a cross-section of the basic shape of the cutting edge.
- Available as double/single-sided inserts with P-hole or plain.

Positive, single-sided inserts

- A positive insert has a wedge angle less than 90°.
- Available with 7° or 11° clearance angle.
- The positive iLock™ inserts have a clearance angle of 5° or 7°.

Chip forming at high pressure and temperatures

The choice of cutting material and grade is critical for success

The ideal cutting tool material should:
- be hard to resist flank wear and deformation
- be tough to resist bulk breakage
- not chemically interact with the workpiece material
- be chemically stable to resist oxidation and diffusion
- have good resistance to sudden thermal changes.

Temperatures given in Celsius
Choice of inserts – grades

The main range of cutting tool materials

The most common cutting tool materials are divided into the following main groups:

- Uncoated cemented carbide (HW)
- Coated cemented carbides (HC)
- Cerments (HT, HC)
  - HT Uncoated cermet containing primarily titanium carbides (TiC) or titanium nitrides (TiN) or both.
  - HC Cermet as above, but coated.
- Ceramics (CA, CM, CN, CC)
  - CA Oxide ceramics containing primarily aluminum oxide (Al₂O₃).
  - CM Mixed ceramics containing primarily aluminum oxide (Al₂O₃) but containing components other than oxides.
  - CN Nitride ceramics containing primarily silicon nitride (Si₃N₄).
  - CC Ceramics as above, but coated.
- Cubic boron nitrides (BN)
- Polycrystalline diamonds (DP, HC)
  - DP Polycrystalline diamonds.
  - HC Polycrystalline diamonds, but coated.
How to select insert geometry and grade

Select the geometry and grade according to the application.

**Machining conditions**

- **Good conditions**
  - Continuous cuts
  - High speeds
  - Pre-machined workpiece
  - Excellent component clamping
  - Small overhangs.

- **Average conditions**
  - Profiling cuts
  - Moderate speeds
  - Forged or cast workpiece
  - Good component clamping.

- **Difficult conditions**
  - Interrupted cuts
  - Low speeds
  - Heavy cast or forged skin on workpiece
  - Poor component clamping.
Choice of inserts – grades

Dedicated grades

Dedicated grades minimize tool wear development

The workpiece material influences the wear during the cutting action in different ways. Therefore dedicated grades have been developed to cope with the basic wear mechanisms, e.g.:

- Flank wear, crater wear and plastic deformation
- Built-up edge and notch wear.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ISO P</th>
<th>Steel</th>
<th>ISO M</th>
<th>Stainless steel</th>
<th>ISO K</th>
<th>Cast iron</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td></td>
<td>M</td>
<td></td>
<td>K</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ISO N</th>
<th>Non-ferrous</th>
<th>ISO S</th>
<th>Heat resistant and super alloys</th>
<th>ISO H</th>
<th>Hardened steel</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td></td>
<td>S</td>
<td></td>
<td>H</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Selection of the Insert Shape

### The Influence of Large and Small Point Angle

The insert shape and point angle varies considerably from the smallest, at 35°, to the round insert.

Each shape has unique properties:
- some provide the highest roughing strength.
- others give the best profiling accessibility.

Each shape also has unique limitations. For example:
- high edge accessibility during machining leads to a weaker cutting edge.

### Table of Insert Shapes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Shape</th>
<th>90°</th>
<th>80°</th>
<th>80°</th>
<th>60°</th>
<th>55°</th>
<th>35°</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Round</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>W</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Diagram

- **Accessibility**
- **Power consumption**
- **Vibration tendency**
- **Cutting edge strength**

### Large Point Angle
- Stronger cutting edge
- Higher feed rates
- Increased cutting forces
- Increased vibration.

### Small Point Angle
- Weaker cutting edge
- Increased accessibility
- Decreased cutting forces
- Decreased vibration.
### Factors affecting choice of insert shape

Insert shape should be selected relative to the entering (lead) angle accessibility required of the tool. The largest possible point angle should be applied to give insert strength and reliability.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Insert shape</th>
<th>Roughing strength</th>
<th>Light roughing/semi-finishing</th>
<th>Finishing</th>
<th>Longitudinal turning</th>
<th>Profiling</th>
<th>Facing</th>
<th>Operational versatility</th>
<th>Limited machine power</th>
<th>Vibration tendencies</th>
<th>Hard material</th>
<th>Intermittent machining</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roughing strength</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Light roughing/semi-finishing</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finishing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>++</td>
<td></td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Longitudinal turning</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Profiling</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>++</td>
<td></td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Facing</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operational versatility</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Limited machine power</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vibration tendencies</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**++ = Most suitable**  
**+ = Suitable**
Number of cutting edges

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Insert shape</th>
<th>R</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>C</th>
<th>W</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>D</th>
<th>V</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ISO (first letter)</td>
<td>8*</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of edges, negative inserts</td>
<td>4*</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Depending on $a_p$

Selection of the Corner radius

Effect of small and large nose radius

Small corner radius
- Ideal for small cutting depth
- Reduces vibration
- Weak cutting edge.

Large corner radius
- Heavy feed rates
- Large depths of cut
- Strong edge security
- Increased radial pressures.

Rule of thumb
The depth of cut should be no less than the nose radius (RE).
Choice of inserts – nose radius

A small nose radius should be first choice

With a small nose radius, the radial cutting forces can be kept to a minimum, while utilizing the advantages of a larger nose radius leads to a stronger cutting edge, better surface texture and more even pressure on the cutting edge.

The relationship between nose radius and DOC (depth of cut) affects vibration tendencies. It is often an advantage to choose a nose radius which is smaller than the DOC.

Effect of nose radius and DOC

The radial force exerted on the workpiece grows linearly until the nose radius of the insert is less than the depth of cut where it stabilizes at the maximum value. However with a round insert, radial pressure will never stabilize because the theoretical nose radius is half the insert diameter (IC).
High feed turning with wiper inserts

Wiper – General information

Why use a wiper
• Increase feed and gain productivity
• Use normal feed rate and gain surface quality.

When to use wipers
• Use wipers as a first choice where it’s possible.

Limitations
• General limitation is vibration
• Visually, surfaces can look different even though the measured surface is great.

Why use a wiper
• Increase feed and gain productivity
• Use normal feed rate and gain surface quality.

When to use wipers
• Use wipers as a first choice where it’s possible.

Limitations
• General limitation is vibration
• Visually, surfaces can look different even though the measured surface is great.

Wiper – Technical solution

• One wiper cutting edge is based on 3-9 radii.
• Contact surface between insert and component is longer with wipers.
• Longer contact surface makes a better surface finish.
• Longer contact surface increases cutting forces which makes a wiper insert more sensitive to vibration when machining unstable components.

A conventional nose radius compared with a wiper nose radius.
**Wiper – Surface finish**

**Rule of thumb**
- Two times feed with a wiper will generate as good surface as conventional geometries with normal feed.
- The same feed with a wiper will generate twice as good surface compared with conventional geometries.

\[ R_t = \text{Maximum value peak-to-valley height} \]
\[ R_a = \text{Arithmetic average height of the profile} \]

**Achieved surface – traditional ISO inserts and wipers**

![Graph showing surface finishes for different feeds with traditional inserts and wipers.](image)
Cutting data parameters affect tool life

Use the potential of:
- $a_p$ – to reduce number of cuts
- $f_n$ – for shorter cutting time
- $v_c$ – for best tool life

**Cutting speed**

$v_c$ – large effect on tool life.
Adjust $v_c$ for best economy

**Feed**

$f_n$ – less effect on tool life than $v_c$

**Cutting depth**

$a_p$ – little effect on tool life
Choice of inserts – speeds and tool life

**Effects of cutting speed**

The single largest factor determining tool life

- **Too high**
  - Rapid flank wear
  - Poor finish
  - Rapid cratering
  - Plastic deformation.

- **Too low**
  - Built-up edge
  - Uneconomical.

**Effects of feed rate**

The single largest factor determining productivity

- **Too high**
  - Loss of chip control
  - Poor surface finish
  - Cratering, plastic deformation
  - High power consumption
  - Chip welding
  - Chip hammering.

- **Too low**
  - Stringers
  - Uneconomical.

**Effects of depth of cut**

- **Too deep**
  - High power consumption
  - Insert breakage
  - Increased cutting forces.

- **Too small**
  - Loss of chip control
  - Vibrations
  - Excessive heat
  - Uneconomical.
General guidelines

- Secure insert and tool holder clamping is an essential factor for stability in turning.
- Tool holder types are defined by the entering (lead) angle, the shape and size of the insert used.
- The selection of tool holder system is mainly based on the type of operation.
- Another important selection is the use of negative versus positive inserts.
- Whenever possible choose modular tools.
Choice of tools – external turning

Four main application areas

Longitudinal turning/facing

The most common turning operation
- Rhombic shape C-style (80°) insert is frequently used.
- Holders with entering angles of 95° and 93° (lead angles of −5° and −3°) are commonly used.
- Alternatives to the C-style insert are D-style (55°), W-style (80°) and T-style (60°).

Profiling

Versatility and accessibility is the determining factor
- The effective entering angle KAPR (lead angle PSIR) should be considered for satisfactory machining.
- Most commonly used entering angle = 93° (lead angle is −3°) because it allows an in-copying angle between 22°-27°.
- The most frequently used insert shapes are D-style (55°) and V-style (35°) inserts.

Facing

The tool is fed in towards the center
- Pay attention to the cutting speed which will change progressively when feeding towards the centre.
- Entering angles of 75° and 95°/91° (Lead angles of 15° and −5°/−1°) are commonly used.
- C-style (80°) and S-style (90°), inserts are frequently used.

Pocketing

A method to produce or widen shallow grooves
- Round inserts are very suitable for plunge turning as they can be used for both radial and axial feeds.
- Neutral 90° holders for round inserts are commonly used.
Large entering angle (small lead angle)

Features / Benefits
- Cutting forces directed towards chuck
- Can turn against a shoulder
- Higher cutting forces at entrance and exit of cut
- Tendency to notch in HRSA and hard materials.

Small entering angle (large lead angle)

Features / Benefits
- Produces a thinner chip
  - Increased productivity
- Reduced notch wear
- Cannot turn against a shoulder.
The entering and copying angle

Important consideration in profile turning

- In profile turning, the cut can vary with regard to cutting depth, chip thickness and speed.

- The largest suitable nose angle on the insert should be selected for strength and cost efficiency, but the insert nose angle also has to be considered in relation to accessibility for proper clearance between material and cutting edge.

- The most common nose angles used are 55° and 35°.

- The entering/lead and insert nose angle are both important factors for accessibility. The work piece profile has to be analyzed in order to select the most suitable copying angle.

- A free cutting angle of at least 2° between the workpiece and the insert has to be maintained.

Axial and radial cutting forces

Large entering angle (small lead angle)

- Forces directed toward the chuck. Less tendency for vibration.
- Higher cutting forces especially at entrance and exit of cut.

Small entering angle (large lead angle)

- Forces are directed both axially and radially.
- Reduced load on the cutting edge.
- Forces are directed both axially and radially - Vibration tendencies.
### Insert recommendation depending on operation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Insert shape</th>
<th>Longitudinal turning</th>
<th>Profiling</th>
<th>Facing</th>
<th>Pocketing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>++ = Recommended</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ = Alternative</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rhombic 80°</td>
<td>++</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rhombic 55°</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Round</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Square</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>++</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Triangular</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trigon 80°</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rhombic 35°</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Selecting the insert clearance angle

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lever</th>
<th>Rigid clamping</th>
<th>Wedge clamping</th>
<th>Screw clamping</th>
<th>Concept clamping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Lever Insert" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Rigid Clamping Insert" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Wedge Clamping Insert" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Screw Clamping Insert" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Concept Clamping Insert" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Internal turning
Tool selection and how to apply

General guidelines

- In internal turning (boring operations) the choice of tool is very much restricted by the component’s hole diameter and length.
  - Choose the largest possible bar diameter and the smallest possible overhang
  - Chip evacuation is a critical factor for successful boring
  - The clamping method has a decisive effect on the performance and result
  - Applying coolant can improve chip evacuation.

Selection factors

Tool and insert geometry

- Entering (lead) angle
- Insert shape, negative/positive
- Insert geometry
- Nose radius
- Corner radius.

Chip evacuation

- Chip size
- Chip control
- Techniques
- Coolant.

Tool requirements

- Reduced length
- Increased diameters
- Optimized shape
- Different tool materials
- Clamping
- Dampened solutions.
Effect of cutting forces on internal turning

Radial and tangential cutting forces deflect the boring bar

Tangential cutting force, $F_t$
- Forces the tool down, away from the center line
- Gives a reduced clearance angle.

Radial cutting force, $F_r$
- Alters cutting depth and chip thickness
- Gives out of tolerance dimension and risk of vibration.

Feed force, $F_a$
- Directed along the feed of the tool.

Selecting entering (lead) angles

Selecting entering angles close to 90°
(lead angle close to 0°).

- If possible, do not choose an entering angle less than 75° (lead angle not more than 15°), since this leads to a dramatic increase of the radial cutting force $F_r$.
- Less force in radial direction = less deflection.
Choice of tools – internal turning

Four main application areas

Longitudinal turning/facing

The most commonly used internal turning operation.
• Rhombic shape C-style 80° insert is frequently used.
• Boring bars with an entering (lead) angle of 95° (-5°) and 93° (-3°) are commonly used.
• D-style 55°, W-style 80° and T-style 60° insert shapes are also frequently used.

Profiling

Versatility and accessibility is the determining factor.
• The effective entering angle, KAPR (lead angle, PSIR) should be considered.
• Bars with entering (lead) angle of 93° (-3°), allowing an in-copying angle between 22–27°, are commonly used.
• D-style 55° and V-style 35° inserts are frequently used.

Longitudinal turning

Boring operations are performed to open up existing holes.
• An entering (lead) angle of close to 90° (0°) is recommended.
• Use smallest possible overhang.
• C-style 80°, S-style 90° and T-style 60° inserts are frequently used.

Back boring

Back boring is a boring operation with reverse feed.
• It is used for turning shoulders less than 90°.
• Boring bars with 93° (-3°) entering (lead) angles and D-style 55° inserts are commonly used.
Selecting the insert clearance angle

Positive inserts generate lower cutting force and tool deflection

- Inserts with clearance angle 7°
  - First choice for small and medium holes from 6 mm (.236 inch) diameter.
- For best economy
  - Use negative inserts in stable conditions and with short overhang.

Insert recommendation depending on operation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Insert shape</th>
<th>Longitudinal turning</th>
<th>Profiling</th>
<th>Facing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>++</td>
<td>= Recommended</td>
<td></td>
<td>++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+</td>
<td>= Alternative</td>
<td></td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rhombic 80°</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
<td>++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rhombic 55°</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Round</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Square</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Triangular</td>
<td>++</td>
<td></td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trigon 80°</td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rhombic 35°</td>
<td></td>
<td>+</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Insert point angle**

**Large point angle:**
- Stronger cutting edge
- Higher feed rates
- Increases cutting forces
- Increases vibration

**Small point angle:**
- Increases accessibility
- Decreases vibration
- Decreases cutting forces

Use the smallest angle giving acceptable strength and economy.

---

**Chip area and corner radius**

**Cutting forces and cutting tool deflection**

- Both small and large chip areas can cause vibration:
  - Large due to high cutting forces
  - Small due to high friction between the tool and the workpiece.

- The relationship between RE (nose radius) and $a_p$ (depth of cut) affects vibration tendencies.
- Less force in radial direction = less deflection.

**Rule of thumb!**
Choose a nose radius which is somewhat less than the cutting depth.
Clamping the boring bar

Critical stability factors for optimized performance

- Maximum contact between tool and tool holder (design, dimensional tolerance).
- Clamping length 3 to 4 times bar diameter (to balance cutting forces).
- Holder strength and stability.

Tool requirements for clamping

Maximum contact between tool and tool holder

**Recommended**

- Coromant Capto® coupling

**Acceptable**

**Not recommended**
Choice of tools - how to apply

EasyFix sleeves
For correct clamping of cylindrical bars

Guarantees correct center height

Benefits:
- Cutting edge in right position
- Best cutting action gives better surface finish
- Reduced setup time
- Even insert wear.

A spring plunger mounted in the sleeve clicks into a groove in the bar and guarantees correct center height.

The slot in the cylindrical sleeve is filled with a silicon sealer which allows the existing coolant supply system to be used.
Factors that affect vibration tendencies

Vibration tendencies grow towards the right

**Entering angle**

- Choose an entering angle as close to 90° (lead angle as close to 0°) as possible, never less than 75° (more than 15° for lead angle).

**Corner radius**

- Choose a corner radius which is somewhat smaller than the cutting depth.

**Micro and macro geometry**

- Use a positive basic-shape insert, as these give lower cutting forces compared to negative inserts.

**Lead (entering) angle**

- Choose an entering angle as close to 90° (lead angle as close to 0°) as possible, never less than 75° (more than 15° for lead angle).

**Edge design**

- Insert wear changes the clearance between the insert and the hole wall. This can affect the cutting action and lead to vibration.

- Inserts with thin coatings, or uncoated inserts, are to be preferred as they normally give lower cutting forces.

**Depth of cut (DOC)**

- Choose a corner radius which is somewhat smaller than the cutting depth.
Chip evacuation

Chip evacuation is a critical factor for successful boring

- Centrifugal force presses the chips to the inside wall of the bore.
- The chips can damage the inside of the bore.

- Internal coolant can help with chip evacuation.
- Boring upside down helps to keep chips away from the cutting edge.

Chip evacuation and chip control

Short and spiral chips
• Preferred. Easy to transport and do not cause a lot of stress on the cutting edge during chip breaking.

Long chips
• Can cause chip evacuation problems.
• Causes little vibration tendency, but can in automated production cause problems due to chip evacuation difficulties.

Hard breaking of chips, short chips
• Power demanding and can increase the vibration.
• Can cause excessive crater wear and result in poor tool life and chip jamming.
Recommended tool overhang

Maximum overhang for different types of bars

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tool Type</th>
<th>Maximum Overhang</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Steel bar</td>
<td>up to 4 x DMM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbide bar</td>
<td>up to 6 x DMM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Short, dampened bar</td>
<td>up to 7 x DMM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Long, dampened bar</td>
<td>up to 10 x DMM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbide reinforced, dampened bar</td>
<td>up to 14 x DMM</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Overhang: ... x DMM

Eliminate vibrations

Internal machining with dampened boring bars

- Increase productivity in deep bores.
- Minimize vibration.
- Machining performance can be maintained or improved.
- Dampened boring bars are available in diameters from 10 mm (.394 inch).
- For max overhang 14 x DMM (carbide reinforced).
## Code key for inserts and toolholders - METRIC

### Extract from ISO 1832:1991

#### INSERT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Tolerances</th>
<th>Insert thickness</th>
<th>Nose radius</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>04</td>
<td>08</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PM</td>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Insert shape

5. Insert size = cutting edge length

2. Insert clearance angle

### TOOL HOLDERS

**External**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Bar diameter</th>
<th>Holder style</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R</td>
<td>G</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Internal**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Bar diameter</th>
<th>Holder style</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>J</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td></td>
<td>G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Coromant Capto® coupling size**

- S = Solid steel bar
- A = Steel bar with coolant supply
- E = Carbide shank bar
- F = Dampened, carbide shank bar
Code keys

1. Insert shape

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>80°</th>
<th>55°</th>
<th>R</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>35°</th>
<th>80°</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

2. Insert clearance angle

| 5° | B | 7° | C | 11° | P | 9° | N |

4. Insert type

| A | G | M | T |

5. Insert size = Cutting edge length

| / mm: | 06–25 | 07–15 | 06–32 | 09–25 | 06–27 | 11–16 | 06–08 |

7. Nose radius

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RE</th>
<th>02</th>
<th>RE = 0.2</th>
<th>04</th>
<th>RE = 0.4</th>
<th>08</th>
<th>RE = 0.8</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>RE = 1.2</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>RE = 1.6</th>
<th>24</th>
<th>RE = 2.4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

First choice nose radius recommendations:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>T-MAX P</th>
<th>CoroTurn 107</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Finishing</td>
<td>08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roughing</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8. Geometry — manufacturer’s option

The manufacturer may add a further two symbols to the code describing the insert geometry e.g.

- PF = ISO P Finishing
- MR = ISO M Roughing

B. Clamping system

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>D</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>P</th>
<th>S</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rigid clamping (RC)</td>
<td>Top and hole clamping</td>
<td>Hole clamping</td>
<td>Screw clamping</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

D. Hand of tool

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>R</th>
<th>L</th>
<th>N</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Right-hand style</td>
<td>Left-hand style</td>
<td>Neutral</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

E. Shank height

Tool length = \( l_1 \) in mm

| H = 100 | S = 250 |
| K = 125 | T = 300 |
| M = 150 | U = 350 |
| P = 170 | V = 400 |
| Q = 180 | W = 450 |
| R = 200 | Y = 500 |
Code key for inserts and toolholders - INCH

Extract from ANSI/ISO standards

INSERT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>C</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>G</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>PM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Insert shape
2. Insert clearance angle
5. Insert size

TOOL HOLDERS

External:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>D</th>
<th>C</th>
<th>L</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>R</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>D</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>F</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Internal:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>T</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>J</td>
<td>G</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Bar diameter:
- S = Solid steel bar
- A = Steel bar with coolant supply
- E = Carbide shank bar
- F = Dampened, carbide shank bar

Coromant Capto® coupling size

Holder lead angle
### 1. Insert shape

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Angle</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>80°</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55°</td>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35°</td>
<td>V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80°</td>
<td>W</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 2. Insert clearance angle

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Angle</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5°</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7°</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11°</td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9°</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 4. Insert type

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Letter</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 5. Insert size

Inscribed circle is indicated in 1/8”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Letter</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 7. Nose radius

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RE</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>.008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1/64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1/32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>3/64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>1/16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>3/32</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

First choice nose radius recommendations:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>T-MAX P</th>
<th>CoroTurn 107</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Finishing</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roughing</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 8. Geometry — manufacturer’s option

The manufacturer may add a further two symbols to the code describing the insert geometry e.g.

- **PF** = ISO P Finishing
- **MR** = ISO M Roughing

### B. Clamping system

- C: Top clamping
- D: Rigid clamping (RC)
- M: Top and hole clamping
- W: Hole clamping
- P: Screw clamping

### D. Hand of tool

- R: Right-hand style
- L: Left-hand style
- N: Neutral

### E. Shank or bar size

**Shanks:** height and width

- A = 4.0
- B = 4.5
- C = 5.0
- D = 6.0

**Bars:**

- M = 6.0
- R = 8.0
- S = 10.0
- T = 12.0
- U = 14.0

### G. Tool length

- Internal, \( l_1 \) in inch:
  - A = 4.0
  - B = 4.5
  - C = 5.0
  - D = 6.0
  - M = 4.0
**Troubleshooting**

**Chip control**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Problem</th>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Long unbroken snarls winding around the tool or workpieces. | • Feed too low for the chosen geometry. | • Increase the feed.  
• Select an insert geometry with better chip breaking capabilities.  
• Use a tool with high precision coolant. |
| | • Depth of cut too shallow for the chosen geometry. | • Increase the depth of cut or select a geometry with better chip breaking capability. |
| | • Nose radius too large. | • Select a smaller nose radius. |
| | • Unsuitable entering (lead) angle. | • Select a holder with as large entering angle (small lead angle) as possible KAPR =90° (PSIR =0°). |
| Very short chips, often sticking together, caused by too hard chip breaking. Hard chip breaking often causes reduced tool life or even insert breakages due to too high chip load on the cutting edge. | • Feed too high for the chosen geometry. | • Choose a geometry designed for higher feeds, preferably a single-sided insert.  
• Reduce the feed. |
| | • Unsuitable entering (lead) angle. | • Select a holder with as small entering angle (large lead angle) as possible KAPR =45°–75° (PSIR=45°–15°). |
| | • Nose radius too small. | • Select a larger nose radius. |
Surface finish

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Problem</th>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| The surface looks and feels "hairy" and does not meet the tolerance requirements. | - The chips are breaking against the component and marking the finished surface. | - Select a geometry which guides the chips away.  
- Change entering (lead) angle.  
- Reduce the depth of cut.  
- Select a positive tool system with a neutral angle of inclination. |

- Hairy surface caused by excessive notch wear on the cutting edge. | - Select a grade with better resistance to oxidation wear, e.g., a cermet grade.  
- Reduce the cutting speed. |

- Too high feed in combination with too small nose radius generates a rough surface. | - Select a wiper insert or a larger nose radius.  
- Reduce the feed. |

Burr formation

Burr formation at the end of the cut when the cutting edge is leaving the workpiece.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Problem</th>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Burr formation at the end of the cut when the cutting edge is leaving the workpiece. | - The cutting edge is not sharp enough.  
- The feed is too low for the edge roundness. | - Use inserts with sharp edges: - PVD coated inserts.  
- ground inserts at small feed rates, < 0.1 mm/r (.004 inch/r). |

- Notch wear at depth of cut, or chipping. | - Use a holder with a small entering angle (large lead angle). |

- End the cut with a chamfer or a radius when leaving the workpiece. |
### Vibration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Problem</th>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>High radial cutting forces due to:</td>
<td>• Unsuitable entering/lead angle.</td>
<td>• Select as large as possible entering angle (KAPR = 90°) or as small as possible lead angle (PSIR = 0°).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Nose radius too large.</td>
<td>• Select a smaller nose radius.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vibrations or chatter marks which are caused by the tooling or the tool mounting. Typical for internal machining with boring bars.</td>
<td>• Unsuitable edge rounding, or negative chamfer.</td>
<td>• Select a more positive geometry or a grade with a thin coating, or an uncoated grade.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Excessive flank wear on cutting edge.</td>
<td>• Select a more wear resistant grade or reduce speed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High tangential cutting forces due to:</td>
<td>• Insert geometry creating high cutting forces.</td>
<td>• Select a positive insert geometry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Chip-breaking is too hard giving high cutting forces.</td>
<td>• Reduce the feed or select a geometry for higher feeds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Varying or too low cutting forces due to small depth of cut.</td>
<td>• Increase the depth of cut slightly to make the insert cut.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Tool incorrectly positioned.</td>
<td>• Check the center height.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Problem</td>
<td>Cause</td>
<td>Solution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Instability in the tool due to long overhang.</td>
<td>• Reduce the overhang.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Use the largest bar diameter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Use a Silent Tool or a carbide bar.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Unstable clamping offers insufficient rigidity.</td>
<td>• Extend the clamping length of the boring bar.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Use EasyFix for cylindrical bars.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Parting & Grooving

Parting and grooving is a category of turning. It has a wide range of machining applications requiring dedicated tools.

These tools can be used, to some extent, for general turning.

• Theory
  B 4

• Selection procedure
  B 7

• System overview
  B 11

• Parting & grooving – how to apply
  B 16

• Troubleshooting
  B 37
Parting & grooving theory

Chip evacuation is essential

Chip evacuation is a critical factor in parting operations. There is little opportunity to break chips in the confined space as the tool moves deeper. The cutting edge is designed largely to form the chip so it can be evacuated smoothly. Consequences of poor chip evacuation are chip obstruction, which leads to poor surface quality, and chip jamming, leading to tool breakdown.

- Chip evacuation is a critical factor in parting operations.
- Chip breaking is difficult in the confined slots created as tools cut deep into the workpiece.
- Typical chips are clock-spring shaped, narrower than the groove.
- The insert geometry shrinks the chip width.

Parting off – definition of terms

\[
\begin{align*}
n &= \text{spindle speed (rpm)} \\
v_c &= \text{cutting speed m/min (ft/min)} \\
f_{nx} &= \text{radial cutting feed mm/r (inch/r)} \\
OH &= \text{overhang recommended}
\end{align*}
\]
Cutting speed value
When parting off to center, the cutting speed will gradually be reduced to zero when the machine has reached its rpm limit.

- Cutting speed declines to zero at the center.

Feed reduction towards center
Cutting speed decreases toward the part center line, causing unbalance. Feed rate must be reduced to maintain cutting force balance during the part-off. The feed rate should be reduced to the minimum recommended or about 0.05 mm/rev (.002”/rev) at 2 mm (.079”) before reaching centerline.

- Start cut with recommended feed rate, reference insert box
- Reduce feed to 0.05 mm/rev (.002”), 2 mm (.079”) before centerline
- Feed reduction reduces vibration and increases tool life
- Feed reduction also reduces pip size.
Grooving— definition of terms

The tool movement in directions X and Z is called feed rate \( (f_{nz}) \), or \( f_{nx}/f_{nz} \) mm/r (inch/r). When feeding towards center \( (f_{nx}) \), the rpm will increase until it reaches the rpm limit of the machine spindle. When this limitation is passed, the cutting speed \( (v_c) \) will decrease until it reaches 0 m/min (ft/min) at the component center.

\[
\begin{align*}
n &= \text{spindle speed (rpm)} \\
v_c &= \text{cutting speed m/min (ft/min)} \\
f_{nz} &= \text{axial cutting feed mm/r (inch/r)} \\
f_{nx} &= \text{radial cutting feed mm/r (inch/r)} \\
a_r &= \text{depth of groove mm (inch)} \\
&\quad \text{(outer dia. to center or bottom of groove)} \\
ap &= \text{depth of cut in turning}
\end{align*}
\]

Face grooving— definition of terms

The feed has a great influence on chip formation, chip breaking, and thickness, and also influences how chips form in the insert geometry. In sideways turning or profiling \( (f_{nz}) \), the depth of the cut \( (a_p) \) will also influence chip formation. The groove diameter for the first cut must be within the range specified on the used tool holder.

\[
\begin{align*}
n &= \text{spindle speed (rpm)} \\
v_c &= \text{cutting speed m/min (ft/min)} \\
f_{nz} &= \text{axial cutting feed mm/r (inch/r)} \\
f_{nx} &= \text{radial cutting feed mm/r (inch/r)} \\
a_r &= \text{depth of groove mm (inch)} \\
DAXIN &= \text{minimum first groove diameter} \\
&\quad \text{(2 on this illustration)} \\
DAXX &= \text{maximum first groove diameter} \\
&\quad \text{(1 on this illustration)}
\end{align*}
\]
Tool selection procedure

Production planning process

1. Component
   - Dimension and quality of the groove or face
   - Workpiece material, chip evacuation

2. Machine
   - Machine parameters

3. Choice of tool
   - Type of tool: Spring-clamp, Screw-clamp, Insert type

4. How to apply
   - Cutting data, method, cutting fluid, etc

5. Troubleshooting
   - Remedies and solutions
1. Component and the workpiece material

Parameters to be considered

Component

- Analyze the dimensions and quality demands of the groove or face to be machined
- Type of operation: parting, grooving
- Cutting depth
- Cutting width
- Corner radius.

Material

- Machinability
- Chip breaking
- Hardness
- Alloy elements.

2. Machine parameters

Some important machine considerations:

- Stability, power and torque especially for larger diameters
- Component clamping
- Turret interface
- Tool changing times/number of tools in turret
- Chip evacuation
- Cutting fluid and coolant.
3. Choice of tools

Example of different machining methods

Multiple grooving
- Multiple grooving is the best method for rough grooving when the depth is bigger than the width.
- Make a “fork”. This will improve chip flow and increase tool life.

Plunge turning
- Plunge turning is the best choice when machining steel and stainless steel and when the width of the groove is larger than the depth.
- Good chip control.

Ramping
- Ramping avoids vibration and minimizes radial forces.
- Round inserts are the strongest inserts available.
- Double the number of cuts/passes.
- First choice in heat resistant super alloys (HRSA). Reduces notch wear.
4. How to apply

Application considerations

- Center height is important, ±0.1 mm (±.004 inch).
- Recommended feed rate 0.05 mm (.002 inch) / rev approximately 2 mm (.079 inch) before center.
- Use shortest possible overhang, OH mm (inch).
- Largest height dimension on blade for bending stiffness.
- Use coolant to improve chip flow.

5. Troubleshooting

Some areas to consider

Insert wear and tool life
- Check the wear pattern and if necessary adjust cutting data accordingly.

To improve chip formation & tool wear
- Use recommended chip former.
- Use neutral front angle.
- Check center height.
- Use cutting fluid.
System overview

External parting and grooving

1. Parting-off solid bars and tubes
2. Turning and recessing
3. Undercutting
4. Shallow to deep grooving
5. Face grooving
6. Profiling

Internal grooving

1. Grooving and pre-parting
2. Face grooving
3. Profiling
### Different systems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Application</th>
<th>CoroCut2</th>
<th>CoroCut1</th>
<th>CoroCut3</th>
<th>CoroCut QD</th>
<th>CoroCut QF</th>
<th>Circlip 266</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Parting and grooving</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>First choice</td>
<td>Second choice</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Threading</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Milling</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drilling</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boring</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tool holding</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Machinability</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other information</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Key:***
- \( \bigcirc \): First choice
- \( \bigcirc \): Second choice
External parting and grooving

Different systems

External parting – diameter ranges

- Deep parting – Ø < 160 mm (6.299")
- Medium parting – Ø < 40 mm (1.575")
- Shallow parting – Ø < 12 mm (0.472")

Grooving – depth ranges

- Deep grooving – depth < 100 mm (3.937")
- Medium grooving – depth < 50 mm (2.000")
- Shallow grooving – depth < 6 mm (0.236")
- Shallow grooving – depth < 3.7 mm (0.146")

Face grooving – diameter ranges

- Large diameters > 34 mm (1.338")
- Small diameters > 0.2 mm (0.0078")
- Small diameters > 6 mm (0.236")
- Medium to large diameters > 16 mm (0.629")
Internal parting and grooving

Different systems

Internal grooving – min hole diameter

Face grooving – hole diameter range
# Inserts

## Geometry overview

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Machining condition</th>
<th>Parting (Cut off)</th>
<th>Grooving</th>
<th>Turning</th>
<th>Profiling</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Finishing</td>
<td>CF</td>
<td>GF</td>
<td>TF</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>CM</td>
<td>GM</td>
<td>TM</td>
<td>RM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roughing</td>
<td>CR</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optimizer</td>
<td>CS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>RO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>RE</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Application**
- Parting and Grooving
- Threading
- Milling
- Drilling
- Boring
- Tool holding

**System overview**
Parting & grooving and how to apply

- Parting and grooving and how to apply  B 17
- Parting off and how to apply            B 22
- General grooving and how to apply      B 26
- Circlip grooving and how to apply      B 28
- Face grooving and how to apply         B 29
- Profiling and how to apply             B 32
- Turning and how to apply               B 34
- Undercutting and how to apply          B 36
Tool overhang and workpiece deflection

The tool overhang should always be minimized for improved stability. In parting and grooving operations consideration must be given to the depth of cut and the width of the groove, which means that stability must often be compromised to meet the demands of accessibility.

Best stability

- Overhang (OH) should be as small as possible
- Largest seat size should be used

Internal machining

Shank type:
- Steel bars ≤3 x DMM
- Dampened steel bars ≤5 x DMM
- Carbide bars ≤5 x DMM
- Carbide reinforced dampened bars, up to 7 x DMM.

Inserts:
- Use smallest possible width
- Use light cutting geometries.
Tool holder selection parameters

System considerations

Deep parting
- First choice are spring-clamp blades with single-edge inserts.

Medium parting
- First choice for medium parting are holders with 2-edge inserts.

Shallow parting
- Use the 3-edge insert for economic parting in mass production.

General tool holder considerations

Tool block with spring-clamp tool blade for tool overhang adjustment.

- Shortest possible overhang, OH mm (inch)
- Maximum tool holder shank
- Largest height dimension
- Maximum blade width.
Spring-clamp design blades

Features/Benefits

• Quicker insert change
• Cut off larger diameter
• Adjustability
• Deep grooving
• Double ended
• Radial feed only
• Precision coolant.

Screw-clamp and spring-lock design holders

Features/Benefits

• Smaller diameters
• Shallow grooving
• Radial & axial feed
• Increased rigidity
• Single ended
• Precision coolant.

Screw-clamp design holders for 3-edge inserts

Features/Benefits

• Extremely small insert widths
  - grooving down to 0.5 mm (.020”)
  - parting down to 1 mm (.039”).
• Cutting depths up to 6 mm (.236”).
• One holder for all insert widths.
• Very tight insert indexing tolerance.
• The productivity choice, 3 cutting edges.
Parting and grooving – how to apply

Parting-off bars

Use as narrow an insert as possible:
- To save material
- Minimize cutting force
- Minimize environmental pollution.

Positioning of the tool

Use maximum deviation of ±0.1 mm (±.004 inch) from center line.

Too high cutting edge
- Clearance will decrease.
- Cutting edge will rub (break).

Too low cutting edge
- Tool will leave material in center (PIP).
Positioning of the tool

90° mounting of tool holder
- Perpendicular surface
- Reduce vibrations.

Hand of insert

Three types of insert with different entering angles:
- Right hand (R)
- Neutral (N)
- Left hand (L).

Insert geometry

Neutral entering angle
- Increases strength
- Higher feed/productivity
- Better surface finish
- Straighter cut
- Pip stays on part falling off.

Small/large corner radius

Small corner radius
- Smaller pip
- Better chip control
- Lower feed rate.

Large corner radius
- Increased feed rate
- Longer tool life.
Parting off

Pip reduction by using different front angles

- Choose left or right hand front angle to control the pip or burr.
- When the front angle is:
  - increased, the pip/burr is decreased
  - decreased, the chip control and tool life are improved.
- Centrifugal force will always push away the parted off component
  - Tool will leave material in center (pip).

Example of front angles on 1-, 2- and 3-edge inserts:

KAPR = 95°, 98°, 100°, 102°, 105°, 110°
(PSIR = 5°, 8°, 10°, 12°, 15°, 20°)

Note!
A front-angled insert will give reduced chip control due to the direction of the chip flow. (A neutral insert directs the chip straight out of the groove).

Parting-off tubes

Use insert with the smallest possible width (CW) to save material, minimize cutting force and environmental impact.

Parting-off thin walled tubes

Make sure that the lowest possible cutting forces are generated. Use inserts with the smallest possible width and sharpest cutting edges.
Tool selection - Review

General recommendations:
• Neutral inserts
• Smallest possible insert width
• Largest possible tool holder.

Consider:
• Cutting depth
• Insert width
• Front angle
• Corner radius.

Use cutting fluid

Cutting fluid has an important function since the space is often restricted and obstructed by the chips. It is therefore important that precision coolant always be used in large amounts and directed at the cutting edge throughout the whole operation.

Apply:
• Use large amounts
• Directly at the cutting edge
• Precision coolant.

Result:
• Positive effect on chip formation
• Prevents chip jamming
• Adds tool life.
Practical hints

- Center height is important, ±0.1 mm (±.004 inch).
- If subspindle is used, pull away the component approximately 2 mm (.079 inch) before center.
- Recommended feed rate 0.05 (.002 inch) / per rev approximately 2 mm (.079 inch) before center – also for tube parting.
Recommendations for boring bar solutions

Recommended overhang

Carbide reinforced dampened bars

\[ \text{LBX} < 7 \times \text{DMM} \]

Dampened steel bars

\[ \text{LBX} \leq 5 \times \text{DMM} \]

Solid steel bars

\[ \text{LBX} \leq 3 \times \text{DMM} \]

EasyFix sleeves

Use EasyFix clamping sleeves for accurate machining with less vibration and precise height.
General grooving

- Single cut grooving is the most economic and productive method to produce grooves.
- If the depth of the groove is bigger than the width, multiple grooving is the best method for rough grooving.
- A screw-clamp or spring-lock design holder should be selected for grooving operations.

Single cut grooving

- Economic and productive method to produce grooves.
- Finishing geometry has width tolerance of ±0.02 mm (±.0008 inch) and works well in low feeds.
- Wiper inserts give extremely high quality surface on the side of the groove.
Multiple grooving

- The best method for rough grooving when depth is bigger than width.
- Use the insert width to produce full grooves and then remove the rings.

Practical hints

When producing high quality grooves, there is often a need for chamfered corners.

- One way is to use the corners on the insert, for example, of a finishing grooving insert, to chamfer; see illustration A.

- A better way to make grooves with chamfer in mass production is to order a Tailor Made insert with the exact chamfer form; see illustration B.
Circlip grooving

Circlips on shafts and axle components are very common.

- Circlip grooving can be performed with three-edge inserts or two-edge grooving inserts.
- For internal grooving there is also a wide choice of inserts and boring bars.

Systems to choose from

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>3-edge inserts</th>
<th>2-edge inserts</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image1" alt="3-edge insert" /></td>
<td><img src="image2" alt="2-edge insert" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- For best economy, use 3-edge inserts in widths 1.00 - 3.18 mm (.039 - .125 inch).
- Or 2-edge inserts in widths 1.50 - 6.00 mm (.059 - .236 inch).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Internal inserts</th>
<th>Carbide rod inserts</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image3" alt="Internal insert" /></td>
<td><img src="image4" alt="Carbide rod insert" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Internal inserts are available for min. hole diameter 10 mm (.394 inch) and with circlip widths 1.10 - 4.15 mm (.043 - .163 inch).
- Min hole diameter for carbide rod inserts is 4.2 mm (.165 inch) and circlip widths are 0.78 - 2.00 mm (.031 - .079 inch).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Internal</th>
<th>Internal/external</th>
<th>Milling is an alternative for non-rotating components</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image5" alt="Milling internal" /></td>
<td><img src="image6" alt="Milling internal/external" /></td>
<td><img src="image7" alt="Milling alternative" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- The circlip widths for diameters 9.7 – 34.7 mm (.382 - 1.366 inch) cutters are 0.70 - 5.15 mm (.028 - .203 inch).
- The circlip widths for diameters 39 – 80 mm (1.535 - 2.480 inch) cutters are 1.10 - 5.15 mm (.043 - .203 inch).
Face grooving

Making grooves axially on the faces on a component requires tools dedicated to the application.

- The correct curve on the tool is dependent on the radius of the workpiece.
- The inner and outer diameters of the groove need to be taken into account in order to select the tool.

Tools for face grooving

- Curved tool for face grooving, shank 0° style.
- Curved tool for face grooving, shank 90° style.
- Exchangable cutting blades make it possible to make a special tool from standard tools.
Face grooving – how to apply

Choice of R and L tools depending on rotation

- Tool is fed axially towards the end surface of the part.
- Tool must be adapted to the bending radius of the groove.
- Machine largest diameter and work inwards for best chip control.

Left hand (L) tool

Right hand (R) tool

Choice of A and B curve, right or left hand tool

Choose the correct tool – A or B curve, right or left hand style – depending on machine setup and workpiece rotation.

Clockwise Spindle rotation

Counter-Clockwise Spindle rotation

www.tool-builder.com
First cut consideration

1. **If the insert support rubs workpiece inside dia:**
   - maybe the dia. range is wrong
   - tool is not parallel to axis
   - check center height
   - lower the tool below center line.

2. **If the insert support rubs workpiece outside dia:**
   - maybe the dia. range is wrong
   - tool is not parallel to axis
   - check center height
   - lift the tool above center line.

**Roughing and finishing a face groove**

**Roughing**

First cut (1) always starts on the largest diameter and works inwards. The first cut offers chip control but less chip breaking.

Cuts two (2) and three (3) should be 0.5–0.8 x width of the insert. Chip breaking will now be acceptable and the feed can be increased slightly.

**Finishing**

Machine the first cut (1) within the given diameter range. Cut two (2) finishes the diameter. Always start outside and turn inwards.

Finally, cut three (3) finishes the inner diameter to the correct dimensions.
Profiling

When machining components with complex shapes, profiling inserts offer great opportunities for rationalization.

- Modern parting and grooving tool systems can also perform turning.
- A screw-clamp tool holder should be selected for turning and profiling operations in view of achieving maximum stability.
- A neutral tool holder is suitable for both opening up or completing a recess.
- The round shape inserts have dedicated geometries for these operations.

Profiling – how to apply

- Use round inserts for outstanding chip control and good surface finish.
- In unstable setups, use ramping to avoid vibrations.
Profile turning

Insert radius < component radius

- Large area of insert creates high cutting force so feed should be reduced.
- If possible, use an insert radius that is smaller than the component radius.
- If you must have the same insert radius as the component radius, use micro-stops to make the chip short and avoid vibrations.

Insert radius ≥ component radius is not recommended

\[ f_{n1} = \text{parallel cuts} \quad \text{max. chip thickness} \quad 0.15-0.40 \text{ mm (}.006 - .016 \text{ inch}). \]
\[ f_{n2} = \text{radius plunging} \quad 50\% \text{ max. chip thickness}. \]
Turning

The most common applications for wide grooves or turning between shoulders are multiple grooving, plunge turning or ramping. All three methods are roughing operations and have to be followed by a separate finishing operation. A rule of thumb is that if the width of the groove is smaller than the depth – multiple grooving should be used and vice versa for plunge turning. However, for slender components, the ramping method may be used.

• Use holders with smallest possible overhang, screw or spring-lock clamping and insert with rail shape if possible.
• Use a stable, modular tooling system if possible.
• Reinforced blade will increase stability.

Roughing

1. Radially infeed to required depth +0.2 mm (.008 inch) (max 0.75 x insert width).
2. Retract radially 0.2 mm (.008 inch).
3. Turn axially to opposite shoulder position.
4. Retract radially 0.5 mm (.020 inch).
Finishing

As the insert contours around the radius, most of the movement is in the Z direction. This produces an extremely thin chip along the front cutting edge which can result in rubbing and hence vibration.

![Diagram](image)

- The axial and radial cutting depth should be 0.5–1.0 mm (.020–.039 inch).

Axial turning

Surface finish

- This wiper effect generates high quality surface finish.
- You get the best wiper effect when you “find” the right combination between feed ($f_n$) and blade deflection.
- $R_a$ value below 0.5 µm ($20 R_a$) will be generated with high bearing.
Undercutting

• When a clearance is needed.
• These applications require dedicated inserts with round cutting edges that are sharp and accurate.
• The tolerance of these inserts is low ±0.02 mm (±.0008 inch).

Tools for undercutting

- Holder for external undercutting. Insert with two cutting edges.
- Holder for internal undercutting. Insert with two cutting edges.
- Holder for external undercutting. Insert with one cutting edge.
# Troubleshooting

## Tool wear

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Problem</th>
<th>Flank wear</th>
<th>Plastic deformation</th>
<th>Crater wear</th>
<th>Chipping</th>
<th>Fracture</th>
<th>Built-up edge</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Solution</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>More positive geometry</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tougher grade</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>More wear resistant grade</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>++</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Increase cutting speed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decrease cutting speed</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>++</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reduce feed rate</td>
<td>++</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>++</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Choose stronger geometry</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>+</td>
<td>++</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

++ = Best possible remedy  
+  = Possible remedy
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Problem</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bad surface</strong></td>
<td>• Use a short and stable tool.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Take away the chips, use geometry with good chip control.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Use tools with precision coolant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Check speed/feed guidelines.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Use wiper geometry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Check tool setup.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bad surface on aluminum</strong></td>
<td>• Select the sharpest geometry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Use geometry with good chip control.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Select a special soluble oil for the material.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Use tools with precision coolant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bad chip breaking</strong></td>
<td>• Change geometry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Select a higher feed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Use dwelling (pecking).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Use tools with precision coolant.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Problem

#### Vibration

- Use a stable setup.
- Check speed/feed guidelines.
- Use shorter tool and component overhang.

- Change geometry.
- Check tool condition.
- Check tool set-up (center height).

### Solution

#### Poor tool life

- Check center height.
- Check angle between tool and component.

- Check condition of blade. If blade is old, the insert could be unstable in the tip seat.
- Use tools with precision coolant.
Threading

Thread turning is the process of an indexable insert tool making a number of passes along the section of a workpiece requiring a screw thread.

By dividing the full cutting depth of the thread into a series of small cuts, the sensitive thread-profile point of the cutting edge is not overloaded.

• Theory C 4
• Selection procedure C 9
• System overview C 13
• How to apply C 19
• Troubleshooting C 24
• Tapping C 28
Threading theory

The threading methods

The prime functions of a thread are:
- to form a mechanical coupling
- to transmit motion by converting rotational movement into linear and vice-versa
- to obtain a mechanical advantage; using a small force to create a larger one.

Different ways of making threads

Molding

Metal cutting

Rolling

Metal cutting threading methods

Thread turning

Tapping

Thread milling

Thread whirling

Grinding
Definitions of terms

- $v_c$ = cutting speed m/min (ft/min)
- $n$ = spindle speed (rpm)
- $a_p$ = total depth of thread mm (inch)
- $nap$ = number of passes

$P$ = pitch, mm or threads per inch (TPI.)

- $\beta$ = angle of the thread
- $d_1$ = minor diameter external
- $D_1$ = minor diameter internal
- $d_2$ = pitch diameter external
- $D_2$ = pitch diameter internal
- $d$ = major diameter external
- $D$ = major diameter internal
- $\phi$ = helix angle of the thread
Theory

Definitions of terms

1. **Root**
   - The bottom surface joining the two adjacent flanks of the thread.

2. **Flank**
   - The side of a thread surface connecting the crest and the root.

3. **Crest**
   - The top surface joining the two flanks.

**Helix angle**

- The helix angle ($\phi$) is dependent on and related to the diameter and pitch ($P$) of the thread.
- By changing the shim, the flank clearance of the insert is adjusted.
- The angle of inclination is lambda ($\lambda$). The most common angle of inclination is 1° which is the standard shim in the tool holder.

**Cutting forces in and out of the thread**

- The highest axial cutting force in the threading operation occurs during the entrance and exit of the cutting tool.
- Aggressive cutting data can lead to movement of insecurely clamped inserts.
Inclining the insert for clearance

Selecting shims for inclination

The inclination angle can be set using shims under the insert in the tool holder. The choice of which shim to use can be made by referring to a chart in the catalog. As standard, all tool holders are delivered with the shim set at 1°.

Tangent of inclination angle

Note! that some pull threading operations require a shim with negative inclination angle.

Standard shim = 1°

\[
\tan \lambda = \frac{P \times ns}{\pi \times d_2}
\]

* ns = number of starts

![Diagram showing the inclination angle and shims](image)

![Graph showing the relationship between pitch, threads per inch, and workpiece diameter](image)
Selecting shims for inclination

The diameter and pitch influence the inclination angles.

Example of how to use the diagram.

1. The workpiece diameter is 40 mm (1.575”) with a thread pitch of 6 mm (.236”). From the diagram we can see that the required shim must have an inclination angle of 3º (standard shim can not be used).

2. The workpiece diameter is 102 mm (4”) with a thread of 5 threads per inch. From the diagram we can see that the required shim must have an inclination angle of 1º (standard shim can be used).

Marking of threading inserts and shims

How to read and understand markings.
Tool selection procedure

Production planning process

1. Component
   - Workpiece material, thread profile and quantity

2. Machine
   - Machine parameters

3. Choice of tool
   - Type of tool:
     - Multi-point
     - Full profile
     - V-profile

4. How to apply
   - Cutting data, infeed etc.

5. Troubleshooting
   - Remedies and solutions
Selection procedure

1. Component and the workpiece material

Component
- Analyze the dimensions and quality demands of the thread to be machined
- Type of operation (external or internal)
- Right- or left-hand thread
- Type of profile (metric, UN, etc.)
- Pitch size
- Number of thread starts
- Tolerance (profile, position).

Material
- Machinability
- Chip breaking
- Hardness
- Alloy elements.

2. Machine parameters

Condition of the machine and setup
- Spindle interface
- Machine stability
- Available spindle speed
- Coolant supply
- Clamping of the workpiece
- Power and torque
- Available programming cycles
- Tool reach and clearance
- Tool overhang.
3. Choice of tools

Different ways to make threads

Multi-point inserts

A full profile (topping) insert with several teeth reduces the number of required in-feeds and generates high productivity, e.g. a multi-point insert with two teeth reduces the number of in-feeds to half.

The tool pressure increases proportionally with the number of teeth, requiring stable setups and shortened overhangs. Sufficient room behind the thread is also needed.

Advantages
• Reduced number of infeeds
• Very high productivity.

Disadvantages
• Requires stable setups
• Needs sufficient room behind the thread.

Full profile inserts

The thread is cut by the insert with good control over the geometrical properties as the distance between the root and the crest is controlled.

The insert can only cut one pitch.

As the insert is generating both the root and the crest, the tool pressure increases, putting high requirements on setup and overhang.

Advantages
• Better control over the thread form
• Less deburring.

Disadvantages
• Each insert can only cut one pitch.

V-profile inserts

The insert can accommodate a range of pitches thus reducing stock. The root and flanks are being formed by the insert.

The crest is controlled in a prior turning operation, resulting in high tolerances.

In setups prone to vibrations, a non-topping insert can often prove to be a solution due to the reduction of cutting pressure.

Advantages
• Flexibility, the same insert can be used for several pitches.

Disadvantages
• Can result in burr formation that needs to be taken away.
4. How to apply

Important application considerations

The infeed method can have a significant impact on the thread machining process.

**It influences:**
- chip control
- insert wear
- thread quality
- tool life.

In practice, the machine tool, insert geometry, workpiece material and thread pitch influence the choice of infeed method.

5. Troubleshooting

Some areas to consider

If you run into trouble with insert tool life, chip control or poor thread quality. Please consider the following aspects.

**Infeed type**
- Optimize infeed method, number and depth of passes.

**Insert inclination**
- Ensure there is sufficient and even clearance (insert – inclination shims).

**Insert geometry**
- Make sure the right insert geometry is used (A, F, or C geometries).

**Insert grade**
- Select the correct grade based on the material and toughness demands.

**Cutting data**
- If necessary change cutting speed and number of passes.
System overview

External thread turning

1. Small part thread turning
2. Conventional thread turning
3. Oil pipe thread turning

Internal thread turning

1. Solid carbide thread turning tools
2. Exchangeable cutting head thread turning tools
3. Conventional threading
4. Oil pipe threading

*TP = Thread pitch
*TPI = Threads per inch

TP* 0.5 – 8 mm
32 – 3 TPI

TP 0.2 – 2 mm

TP 0.5 – 3 mm
32 – 10 TPI
Min hole: 10 mm
(.394")

TP 0.5 – 2.5 mm
32 – 3 TPI
Min hole: 12 mm
(2.374")

TP 0.5 – 8 mm
Min hole: 60.3 mm
(2.374")
External thread turning assortment

Choose from an extensive program

Inserts

Thread pitch (TP)

mm

TPI

0.2 2.0 5.0 8.0 3

32 10 3

• Four insert dimension (L) / sizes (IC):
  11, 16, 22, 27 mm
  (1/4, 3/8, 1/2, 5/8 inch)

Tool holders

• Coromant Capto® cutting units
• QS-holders
• Shank tools
• Exchangable cutting heads
• Cartridges.
Internal thread turning assortment

Choose from an extensive program and several systems

For high precision, internal thread turning of small holes

Solid carbide threading

Exchangeable head inserts
## Thread forms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Application</th>
<th>Insert/thread form</th>
<th>Thread type</th>
<th>Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>General use</td>
<td><img src="image1" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>ISO metric American UN</td>
<td>MM UN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pipe thread</td>
<td><img src="image2" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>Whitworth, NPT British Standard (BSPT), NPTF American National Pipe Threads</td>
<td>WH, NT PT, NF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Food and fire</td>
<td><img src="image3" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>Round DIN405</td>
<td>RN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aerospace</td>
<td><img src="image4" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>MJ UNJ</td>
<td>MJ NJ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oil and gas</td>
<td><img src="image5" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>API Round API &quot;V&quot; form 60°</td>
<td>RD V38, 40, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oil and gas</td>
<td><img src="image6" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>Buttress, VAM</td>
<td>BU</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Motion General use</td>
<td><img src="image7" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>Trapezoidal ACME Stub ACME</td>
<td>TR AC SA</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### General usage
- Good balance between load bearing capacity and volume of material.

### Aerospace
- High precision and minimized risk for stress concentration and breakage.

### Pipe Threads
- Ability to bear loads.
- Able to form leak-proof connections (threads are often conical).

### Oil & Gas
- Extreme load bearing and leak proof requirements, with limitations of thin wall thickness of pipe.

### Food & Fire
- Same as for pipe threads but round, for easy cleaning for food.
- Easily repeated connecting/disconnecting for fire.

### Motion
- Symmetrical form.
- Large contact surface.
- Sturdy form.
Insert types
Three different types of thread turning inserts

- **Full profile inserts**
  - For high productivity in threading.

- **V-profile inserts - 60° and 55°**
  - For threading with minimum tool inventory.

- **Multi-point inserts**
  - For highly productive, economic thread turning in mass production.

Three different geometries

- **A-geometry**
  - First choice in most operations.

- **F-geometry**
  - Sharp geometry.

- **C-geometry**
  - Chip breaking geometry.

- Good chip forming in a wide range of materials.
- Gives clean cuts in sticky and work hardening materials.
- Optimized geometry for low carbon, low alloy and easily machined stainless steel.
Threading solutions

- Ultra-rigid threading with fixed position inserts.
- The insert locates in the correct position with guidance of the rail.
- The screw forces the insert on the rail back to a radial stop at one contact face in the insert seat. (The red contact faces).
- A secure insert interface ensures better tool life and thread quality.

A variety of tool holder solutions

- Quick change coupling
- Boring bar
- Coromant Capto® external coupling
- Drop head
- Coromant Capto® internal coupling
- Shank tool
- Exchangable cutting head
How to apply
Three different types of infeed

The infeed method can have a significant impact on the thread machining process. It influences:
- chip control
- insert wear
- thread quality
- tool life.

In practice, the machine tool, insert geometry, workpiece material and thread pitch influence the choice of infeed method.

Modified flank infeed

• Most newer CNC machines can be programmed for modified flank.
• Used with C-geometry as the chip breaker will not function with radial infeed.
• Axially directed cutting forces reduce the risk of vibrations.
• Controlled chip direction.
• Used for all insert geometries.
• C-geometry, designed only for modified flank infeed.

Radial infeed

• Used by all manual machines and most canned CNC programs.
• First choice for work hardening materials and suitable for fine pitches.

Incremental infeed

• Normally used with very large profiles and pitches, long work threading cycles where tool life needs to match the length of the thread.
• Requires special programming.
Modified flank infeed

- Most CNC machines have a programmed cycle using this infeed.
- Chip is similar to that in conventional turning - easier to form and guide.
- Axially directed cutting forces reduce the risk of vibrations.
- Chip is thicker, but has contact with only one side of the insert.
- Less heat is transferred to the insert.
- First choice for most threading operations.

Infeed direction

- Better chip control
- Better surfaces
- For C-geometry insert, modified flank infeed is the only suitable infeed.

Radial infeed

- Most commonly used method - and only method possible on older non-CNC lathes.
- Makes a stiff “V” chip.
- Even insert wear.
- Insert tip exposed to high temperatures, which restricts depth of infeed.
- Suitable for fine pitches.
- Vibration possible and poor chip control in coarse pitches.
- First choice for work hardening materials.
Incremental infeed

- Recommended for large profiles.
- Even insert wear and longest tool life in very coarse threads.
- Chips are directed both ways, making control difficult.

Programming methods

Ways of improving the machining result

Decreasing depth per pass (Constant chip area)

- The deepest pass is the first pass
- Follows recommendation on infeed tables in catalog
- More “balanced” chip area
- Last pass actually around 0.07 mm (.0028”).

Constant depth per pass

- Each pass is of an equal depth, regardless of the number of passes.
- Much more demanding on the insert
- Offers best chip control
- Should not be used for pitches larger than TP 1.5 mm or 16 TPI.
Thread turning with full profile inserts

Use extra stock/material for topping the thread

For topping inserts, 0.03 – 0.07 mm (.001 – .003") material should be left from prior turning operations to allow for proper forming of the crest.

- The blank does not need to be turned to the exact diameter prior to the threading.
- Add extra stock/material on the workpiece diameter, 0.06 – 0.14 mm (.002 – .006") for topping the finish diameter of the thread.

Infeed values recommendations

Number of infeeds and total depth of thread.

ISO metric and inch, external

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No. of infeeds (nap)</th>
<th>Pitch, mm</th>
<th>Reduce cutting speed</th>
<th>0.5</th>
<th>0.75</th>
<th>1.0</th>
<th>1.25</th>
<th>1.5</th>
<th>1.75</th>
<th>2.0</th>
<th>2.5</th>
<th>3.0</th>
<th>3.5</th>
<th>4.0</th>
<th>4.5</th>
<th>5.0</th>
<th>5.5</th>
<th>6.0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Radial infeed per pass, mm</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.11</td>
<td>0.17</td>
<td>0.20</td>
<td>0.22</td>
<td>0.22</td>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>0.27</td>
<td>0.28</td>
<td>0.34</td>
<td>0.34</td>
<td>0.37</td>
<td>0.41</td>
<td>0.43</td>
<td>0.46</td>
<td>0.50</td>
<td>0.59</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.09</td>
<td>0.15</td>
<td>0.16</td>
<td>0.17</td>
<td>0.21</td>
<td>0.21</td>
<td>0.24</td>
<td>0.24</td>
<td>0.26</td>
<td>0.31</td>
<td>0.32</td>
<td>0.34</td>
<td>0.39</td>
<td>0.40</td>
<td>0.43</td>
<td>0.50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>0.07</td>
<td>0.11</td>
<td>0.13</td>
<td>0.14</td>
<td>0.17</td>
<td>0.17</td>
<td>0.18</td>
<td>0.20</td>
<td>0.21</td>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>0.28</td>
<td>0.32</td>
<td>0.35</td>
<td>0.39</td>
<td>0.43</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>0.07</td>
<td>0.07</td>
<td>0.11</td>
<td>0.11</td>
<td>0.14</td>
<td>0.14</td>
<td>0.16</td>
<td>0.18</td>
<td>0.21</td>
<td>0.22</td>
<td>0.24</td>
<td>0.27</td>
<td>0.27</td>
<td>0.30</td>
<td>0.33</td>
<td>0.43</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>0.34</td>
<td>0.50</td>
<td>0.08</td>
<td>0.10</td>
<td>0.12</td>
<td>0.12</td>
<td>0.14</td>
<td>0.15</td>
<td>0.16</td>
<td>0.18</td>
<td>0.19</td>
<td>0.22</td>
<td>0.24</td>
<td>0.24</td>
<td>0.27</td>
<td>0.30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>0.67</td>
<td>0.08</td>
<td>0.08</td>
<td>0.08</td>
<td>0.10</td>
<td>0.12</td>
<td>0.13</td>
<td>0.14</td>
<td>0.17</td>
<td>0.17</td>
<td>0.20</td>
<td>0.22</td>
<td>0.22</td>
<td>0.24</td>
<td>0.24</td>
<td>0.27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>0.08</td>
<td>0.08</td>
<td>0.11</td>
<td>0.12</td>
<td>0.13</td>
<td>0.13</td>
<td>0.15</td>
<td>0.15</td>
<td>0.16</td>
<td>0.18</td>
<td>0.20</td>
<td>0.20</td>
<td>0.22</td>
<td>0.22</td>
<td>0.24</td>
<td>0.27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>1.14</td>
<td>1.28</td>
<td>0.12</td>
<td>0.14</td>
<td>0.14</td>
<td>0.16</td>
<td>0.18</td>
<td>0.18</td>
<td>0.20</td>
<td>0.20</td>
<td>0.22</td>
<td>0.22</td>
<td>0.24</td>
<td>0.24</td>
<td>0.27</td>
<td>0.29</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>0.08</td>
<td>0.11</td>
<td>0.12</td>
<td>0.13</td>
<td>0.14</td>
<td>0.15</td>
<td>0.17</td>
<td>0.19</td>
<td>0.19</td>
<td>0.21</td>
<td>0.22</td>
<td>0.22</td>
<td>0.24</td>
<td>0.24</td>
<td>0.27</td>
<td>0.29</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>1.58</td>
<td>0.10</td>
<td>0.11</td>
<td>0.12</td>
<td>0.14</td>
<td>0.16</td>
<td>0.18</td>
<td>0.19</td>
<td>0.19</td>
<td>0.21</td>
<td>0.22</td>
<td>0.22</td>
<td>0.24</td>
<td>0.24</td>
<td>0.27</td>
<td>0.29</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>0.08</td>
<td>0.10</td>
<td>0.10</td>
<td>0.13</td>
<td>0.15</td>
<td>0.15</td>
<td>0.16</td>
<td>0.16</td>
<td>0.16</td>
<td>0.18</td>
<td>0.18</td>
<td>0.20</td>
<td>0.20</td>
<td>0.22</td>
<td>0.22</td>
<td>0.24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>1.89</td>
<td>2.20</td>
<td>0.11</td>
<td>0.12</td>
<td>0.12</td>
<td>0.13</td>
<td>0.15</td>
<td>0.15</td>
<td>0.16</td>
<td>0.16</td>
<td>0.18</td>
<td>0.20</td>
<td>0.20</td>
<td>0.22</td>
<td>0.22</td>
<td>0.24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>0.08</td>
<td>0.10</td>
<td>0.10</td>
<td>0.13</td>
<td>0.14</td>
<td>0.14</td>
<td>0.16</td>
<td>0.16</td>
<td>0.16</td>
<td>0.18</td>
<td>0.18</td>
<td>0.20</td>
<td>0.20</td>
<td>0.22</td>
<td>0.22</td>
<td>0.24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>0.10</td>
<td>0.10</td>
<td>0.10</td>
<td>0.10</td>
<td>0.10</td>
<td>0.10</td>
<td>0.10</td>
<td>0.10</td>
<td>0.10</td>
<td>0.10</td>
<td>0.10</td>
<td>0.10</td>
<td>0.10</td>
<td>0.10</td>
<td>0.10</td>
<td>0.10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No. of infeeds (nap)</th>
<th>Pitch, TPI</th>
<th>Radial infeed per pass, mm</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>.003</td>
<td>.003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>.005</td>
<td>.005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>.005</td>
<td>.005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>.003</td>
<td>.003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>.003</td>
<td>.003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>.003</td>
<td>.003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>.003</td>
<td>.003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>.003</td>
<td>.003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>.003</td>
<td>.003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>.003</td>
<td>.003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>.003</td>
<td>.003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>.003</td>
<td>.003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>.003</td>
<td>.003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>.003</td>
<td>.003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>.003</td>
<td>.003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>.003</td>
<td>.003</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• The blank does not need to be turned to the exact diameter prior to the threading.
• Add extra stock/material on the workpiece diameter, 0.06 – 0.14 mm (.002 – .006") for topping the finish diameter of the thread.

Other information

ENG ENG
Positioning of the tool

Max ± 0.1 mm (±.004 inch)

Use maximum deviation of ±0.1 mm (±.004") from centerline.

Too high cutting edge

• Clearance will decrease.
• Cutting edge will rub (break).

Too low cutting edge

• The thread profile can be incorrect.

Method of thread turning

Right and left hand threads and inserts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>External</th>
<th>Internal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Right hand threads</td>
<td>Left hand threads</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Right hand tool/insert</td>
<td>Left hand tool/insert</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Right hand tool/insert</td>
<td>Left hand tool/insert</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Left hand tool/insert</td>
<td>Right hand tool/insert</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Left hand tool/insert</td>
<td>Right hand tool/insert</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Negative shims must be used in a pull threading application.
Thread turning application hints

Some vital factors to consider to achieve success

• Check the workpiece diameter for correct working allowance before thread-turning, add 0.14 mm (.006") as crest allowance.
• Position the tool accurately in the machine.
• Check the setting of the cutting edge in relation to pitch diameter.
• Make sure the correct insert geometry is used (A, F, or C).
• Ensure there is sufficient and even clearance (insert-inclination shims) to achieve correct flank clearance by selecting the appropriate shim.
• If threads are rejected, check entire setup, including machine tool.
• Check the available CNC program for thread turning.
• Optimize infeed method, number and size of passes.
• Ensure the correct cutting speed for the demands of the application.
• In case of pitch error on component thread, check to see if machine pitch is correct.

• It is recommended that the tool should start a minimum distance of 3 times the thread pitch before engaging the workpiece.
• Precision coolant can improve tool life and chip control.
• A quick change system allows for quick and easy setup.
• For best productivity and tool life, first choice - multi-point insert, second choice - full profile single point insert, third choice - V-profile insert.
## Troubleshooting

### Problem

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plastic deformation</th>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image1" alt="Plastic deformation" /></td>
<td>1. Excessive temperature in cutting zone. 2. Inadequate supply of coolant. 3. Wrong grade.</td>
<td>1. Reduce the cutting speed, increase the number of infeeds. Reduce the largest infeed depth, check the diameter before threading. 2. Improve coolant supply. 3. Choose a grade with better resistance to plastic deformation.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(A) Starts as plastic deformation, (B) which leads to edge chipping.

### Built-up edge (BUE)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Built-up edge (BUE)</th>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image2" alt="Built-up edge (BUE)" /></td>
<td>1. Often occurs in stainless steel and low carbon steel materials. 2. Unsuitable grade or cutting edge temperature too low.</td>
<td>1. Increase cutting speed. 2. Choose an insert with good toughness, preferably PVD coated.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

BUE (A) and edge chipping (B) often occur in combination. Accumulated BUE is then ripped away together with small amounts of insert material, which leads to chipping.

### Insert breakage

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Insert breakage</th>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image3" alt="Insert breakage" /></td>
<td>1. Wrong turned diameter prior to threading. 2. Infeed series too tough. 3. Wrong grade. 4. Poor chip control. 5. Center height incorrect.</td>
<td>1. Turn to correct diameter before threading operation, 0.03 – 0.07 mm (.001 – .003&quot;) radially larger than max. diameter for thread. 2. Increase number of infeeds. Reduce size of the largest infeeds. 3. Choose a tougher grade. 4. Change to C-geometry and use modified flank infeed. 5. Correct center height.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Often occurs in stainless steel and low carbon steel materials. 2. Unsuitable grade or cutting edge temperature too low.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Problem</th>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rapid flank wear</td>
<td>1. Highly abrasive material. 2. Cutting speed too high. 3. Infeed depths too shallow. 4. Insert is above center line.</td>
<td>1. Wrong grade. Choose a more wear resistant grade. 2. Reduce cutting speed. 3. Reduce number of infeeds. 4. Correct center height.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abnormal flank wear</td>
<td>1. Incorrect method for flank infeed. 2. Insert inclination angle does not agree with the lead angle of the thread.</td>
<td>1. Change method of flank infeed for F-geometry and A-geometry; 3 - 5° from flank, for C-geometry; 1° from flank. 2. Change shim to obtain correct angle of inclination.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vibration</td>
<td>1. Incorrect clamping of the workpiece. 2. Incorrect setup of the tool. 3. Incorrect cutting data. 4. Incorrect center height.</td>
<td>1. Use soft jaws. 2. When using tail stock, optimize centering hole of component and check pressure of tail stock/face drive. Minimize overhang of tool. Check that the clamping sleeve for bars is not worn. Use 570-3 anti-vibration bars. 3. Increase cutting speed; if this does not help, lower the speed dramatically and try F-geometry. 4. Adjust center height.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Troubleshooting

## Problem: Poor surface finish

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1. Cutting speed too low.  
2. The insert is above the center height.  
3. Uncontrolled chips. | 1. Increase cutting speed.  
2. Adjust center height.  
3. Use C-geometry and modified flank infeed. |

## Problem: Poor chip control

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1. Incorrect method of infeed.  
2. Incorrect thread geometry. | 1. Modified flank infeed 3 - 5°.  
2. Use C-geometry with modified flank infeed 1°. |

## Problem: Shallow profile

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1. Wrong center height.  
2. Insert breakage.  
Excessive wear. | 1. Adjust center height.  
2. Change cutting edge. |

## Problem: Incorrect thread profile

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1. Unsuitable thread profile (angle of thread and nose radius) external inserts used for internal operation or vice versa.  
2. Wrong center height.  
3. Holder not 90° to center line.  
2. Adjust center height.  
3. Adjust to 90°.  
4. Correct the machine. |

## Problem: Excessive edge pressure

1. Work hardening material in combination with infeed depths which are too shallow for the geometry.  
2. Excessive pressure on cutting edge can cause chipping.  
3. Profile with too small thread profile angle.

1. Reduce the number of infeeds.  
2. Change to F-geometry.  
3. Change to a tougher grade.  
4. Use modified flank infeed.
Tapping

- Theory C 29
- Tapping process C 30
- Hole size and tolerances C 33
- Coolant C 34
- Tool holding C 35
Tapping theory

Definitions of terms

1. Rake angle
2. Relief (clearance)
3. Chamfer angle
4. Chamfer (length)
5. Spiral point angle
6. Spiral angle
7. Pitch
8. Outer diameter

Long chamfer

- High torque
- Best surface quality
- Thin chips
- Low pressure at the chamfer
- Longer tool life
- Most common for spiral point tap.

Medium chamfer
Cutting tap

Forming tap

Short chamfer
Cutting tap

Forming tap
Different standards

ISO and ANSI have quite short OAL (overall length) and are rather similar. Except for the shank diameter which is in inch for ANSI and metric for ISO.

DIN is a long version and metric. DIN ANSI is a mix of both, with shank diameter from ANSI and OAL from DIN.

Tapping process

Different types of tapping processes
Geometries for different types of holes

Spiral point tap for through holes

- The strongest tap style
- Suited for tough conditions
- Pushes the chips forward through the hole
- Tap for through hole.

Spiral flute tap for blind holes

- The most common tap style
- Drives the chips up along the shank
- Tap for blind holes.

Straight flute tap for all holes

- For short chipped material like cast iron
- Often used in automotive industry, e.g. pumps and valves
- Can be used for all types of holes and depths.

Forming tap - a chip free tap solution

- A chip-free tap solution
- For soft steel, stainless steel and aluminum
- Can be used for all types of holes and depths
- Increases the strength of the thread in some materials, e.g. aluminum.
Forming and tapping processes

**Forming tap**
The thread is formed by deforming the material.
No chips are generated.

**Cutting tap**
The tap cuts the material.
Chips are generated.
Hole size and tolerances

Basic calculation of hole size, cutting taps

\[ D = TD - TP \]

\( D \) = Hole diameter (mm, inch)
\( TD \) = Nominal thread diameter (mm, inch)
\( TP \) = Thread pitch (mm, inch)

Hole size for M10 x 1.5 cutting tap = 8.5 mm (8.5 = 10 - (1.5))
Hole size for 1/4" - 20 cutting tap = .2008" (.2008" = 1/4 - (20)).

Basic calculation of hole size, forming taps

\[ D = TD - \left(\frac{TP}{2}\right) \]

\( D \) = Hole diameter (mm, inch)
\( TD \) = Nominal thread diameter (mm, inch)
\( TP \) = Thread pitch (mm, inch)

Drill size for M10 x 1.5 forming tap = Hole size for 1/4" - 20 cutting tap = .2008" (.2008" = 1/4 - (20)) mm (9.3 = 10 - (1.5/2))
Drill size for 1/4" - 20 forming tap = .2264" (.2264" = 1/4 - (20/2)).
Coolant supply is essential in tapping and influences

- Chip evacuation
- Thread quality
- Tool life.

Coolant supply

Internal or external coolant supply

External coolant supply

Different cutting fluid/emulsion

Three main alternatives
- Mineral oil based
- Synthetic coolant
- Straight oil.

Two more options
- Vegetable oil based
- Semi synthetic.

Always be aware of
- Type of cutting fluid used in the machine
- Oil content.
Tool holding for tapping
Overview

Floating rubber collet chuck
Allows a certain amount of play to enable a proper path. Often used in manual and small tuning machines.

Benefits and recommendations
• Rubber collets cover a wide clamping range
• Tension and compression to eliminate feed error.

Coromant Capto®

Rigid ER collet chuck
With this approach there is no tension/compression play. That means motion of the spindle and axis movement has to be precisely synchronized. This requires a more sophisticated CNC controller.

Benefits and recommendations
• Rigid tapping is often faster
• Tooling cost is lower (rigid holders cost less than tension/compression holders)
• More compact and reliable than tension/compression holders
• Can result in a more accurate thread.

Rigid tapping with ER collet chuck

Note! Increased forces on the tap results in reduced tool life. Does not reverse quick enough at high speeds, say 6000 rpm.
Quick change tapping chuck

First choice for standard tapping operations. All-round, lower volume production. Mainly for older, non-stable machines.

Benefits and recommendations

- Easy tap holding with quick change
- Tension and compression to eliminate feed error
- Adaptors with or without clutch.

Coromant Capto®

HSK solid holder

Weldon solid holder
Synchronous feed tap chucks

Rigid tap holder with micro float compensation for elimination of oversized threading. First choice for CNC machine tools and synchronized tapping operations.

Benefits and recommendations

- High volume production / high precision
- Reduces thrust force on tap flanks
- Limited actual compensation provides accurate depths
- Designed for internal high pressure coolant.

Coromant Capto®  Weldon shank holder  MAS-BT solid holder
Milling

Milling is performed with a rotating, multi-edge cutting tool which performs programmed feed movements against a workpiece in almost any direction.

Milling is mostly applied to generate flat faces, but with the development of machines and software there are increasing demands to produce other forms and surfaces.

- Theory
  D 4
- Selection procedure
  D 9
- System overview
  D 13
- Choice of inserts – how to apply
  D 24
- Choice of tools – how to apply
  D 29
- Troubleshooting
  D 36
Milling theory
Definitions of terms

Spindle speed, cutting speed and cutter diameter

Spindle speed \((n)\) in rpm is the number of revolutions the milling tool on the spindle makes per minute.

Cutting speed \((v_c)\) in m/min (ft/min) indicates the surface speed at which the cutting edge machines the workpiece.

Specified cutter diameter \((DCX)\), having an effective cutting depth to diameter \((DC)\), which is the basis for the cutting speed \(v_c\) or \(v_e\).
Feed, number of teeth and spindle speed

Feed per tooth, \( f_z \) mm/tooth (inch/tooth), is a value in milling for calculating the table feed. The feed per tooth value is calculated from the recommended maximum chip thickness value.

Feed per minute, \( v_f \) mm/min (inch/min), also known as the table feed, machine feed or feed speed is the feed of the tool in relation to the workpiece in distance per time-unit related to feed per tooth and number of teeth in the cutter.

The number of available cutter teeth in the tool \( (z_n) \) varies considerably and is used to determine the table feed while the effective number of teeth \( (z_c) \) is the number of effective teeth in cut.

Feed per revolution \( (f_n) \) in mm/rev (inch/rev) is a value used specifically for feed calculations and often to determine the finishing capability of a cutter.
## Definitions of terms

### Depth of cut

Axial depth of cut, \( a_p \) mm (inch), is what the tool removes in metal on the face of the workpiece. This is the distance the tool is set below the unmachined surface.

Radial cutting width, \( a_e \) mm (inch), is the width of the component engaged in cut by the diameter of the cutter. It is the distance across the surface being machined or, if the tool diameter is smaller, that is covered by the tool.

### Net power, torque and specific cutting force

The net power \( P_c \) is the power the machine must be able to provide to the cutting edges in order to drive the cutting action. The efficiency of the machine must be taken into consideration when selecting cutting data.

The torque \( M_c \) is the torque value produced by the tool during cutting action, which the machine must be able to provide.

The specific cutting force value \( k_c \) is a material constant, expressed in N/mm\(^2\) (lbs/inch\(^2\)). The values can be found in our main ordering catalog and technical guide.

### Formulas

**Metric**

\[
P_c = \frac{a_p \times a_e \times v_f \times k_c}{60 \times 10^6} \quad \text{kW}
\]

**Inch**

\[
P_c = \frac{a_p \times a_e \times v_f \times k_c}{396 \times 10^3} \quad \text{Hp}
\]

**Metric**

\[
M_c = \frac{P_c \times 30 \times 10^3}{\pi \times n} \quad \text{Nm}
\]

**Inch**

\[
M_c = \frac{P_c \times 16501}{\pi \times n} \quad \text{lbf ft}
\]
Climb or conventional milling

Climb milling – preferred method

Using climb milling (also referred to as down milling), the burnishing effect is avoided, resulting in less heat and minimal work-hardening tendency.

• In climb milling, the insert starts its cut with a large chip thickness.

Conventional milling

The feed direction of the workpiece is opposite to that of the cutter rotation at the area of cut.

• In conventional milling (also referred to as up milling) the chip thickness starts at zero and increases to the end of the cut.

Always use climb milling for best cutting conditions.

Cutter diameter and position

The selection of milling cutter diameter is usually made on the basis of the workpiece width with the availability of the machine power also being taken into account.

The position of the cutter in relation to the workpiece engagement, and the contact which the cutter teeth have, are vital factors for a successful operation.

• Cutter diameter should be 20 – 40% larger than the width of cut.

• 2/3 rule (i.e., 150 mm (5.906 inch) cutter)
  - 2/3 in cut, 100 mm (3.937 inch)
  - 1/3 out of cut, 50 mm (1.969 inch).

• By moving the milling cutter off the center, a more constant and favorable direction of cutting forces will be obtained.
Chip formation through cutter position

The cutting edge in a radial direction engages with the workpiece in three different phases:

1. Entrance into cut
2. Arc of engagement in cut
3. Exit from cut.

\[ a_e = 75\% \times DC \]

The centerline of the cutter is well inside the workpiece width, \( a_e > 75\% \) of DC.

- Most favorable cutting conditions and optimized use of the cutter diameter.
- The initial impact at the entry of cut is taken up further along the cutting edge, away from the sensitive tip.
- The insert leaves the cut gradually.

The centerline of the cutter is well outside the workpiece width, \( a_e < 25\% \) of DC.

- The angle of entry is positive
- The impact at the entry is taken up by the outermost tip of the insert and the load is gradually taken up by the tool.

The centerline of the cutter is in line with the workpiece edge, \( a_e = 50\% \) of DC.

- Not recommended.
- The shock loads at the cutting edge are very high at entry.

\( + \) = Recommended cutter position.
\( - \) = Not recommended cutter position.
Selection procedure

Production planning process

1. Component
   - Type of operation and method
   - Workpiece material and quantity

2. Machine
   - Machine parameters

3. Choice of tool
   - Select type of cutter

4. How to apply
   - Cutting data, method etc.

5. Troubleshooting
   - Remedies and solutions
1. Component and the workpiece material
Parameters to be considered

**Geometric shape**
- Flat surface
- Deep cavities
- Thin walls/bases
- Slots.

**Material**
- Machinability
- Cast or pre-machined
- Chip forming
- Hardness
- Alloy elements.

**Tolerances**
- Dimensional accuracy
- Surface finish
- Part distortion
- Surface integrity.

2. Machine parameters
Condition of the machine and setup

**Machine**
- Available power
- Age/condition – stability
- Horizontal/vertical
- Spindle type and size
- Number of axes/configuration
- Workpiece clamping.

**Tool holding**
- Long overhang
- Poor holding
- Axial/radial runout.
3. Choice of tools

Different ways to optimize milling

Cutters with round inserts

**Advantages**
- Robust milling cutters
- Very flexible for face milling and profiling
- High performance multi-purpose cutters.

**Disadvantages**
- Round inserts require more stable machines.

45° face mill

**Advantages**
- General choice for face milling
- Balanced radial and axial cutting forces
- Smooth entry into cut.

**Disadvantages**
- Max cutting depth 6-10 mm (.236-.394 inch).

90° square shoulder face mill

**Advantages**
- Great versatility
- Large depth of cut
- Low axial cutting forces (thin workpieces)
- Light-cutting inserts with true four edges.

**Disadvantages**
- Feed per tooth is relatively low while \( f_z = h_{ex} \).
4. How to apply

Important application considerations

Number of cutting edges/pitch
- Selecting the right number of edges or pitch is very important.
- It affects both productivity and stability.

Insert geometry
- Select between a geometry for Light, Medium or Heavy machining.

Stability
- Choose largest possible spindle size or outer diameter.

Chip formation through cutter positioning
- Always use climb milling
- Move the cutter off the center
- Use a cutter with a diameter 20–50% larger than the cut.

5. Troubleshooting

Some areas to consider

Insert wear and tool life
- Check the wear pattern and if necessary adjust the cutting data accordingly.

Unsatisfactory surface finish
- Check spindle runout
- Use wiper inserts
- Decrease feed per tooth.

Vibration
- Weak fixture
- Long tool overhang
- Weak workpiece
- Size of spindle taper.
System overview

Face milling

Cutters for general use

- Face milling cutter with round inserts for tough conditions
- General purpose face milling cutter with 45° entering (lead) angle

Dedicated cutters

- High feed face milling
- Face milling cutters for cast iron machining
- Heavy duty face milling
- Face milling cutters for aluminum machining
Shoulder milling

Cutters for general use

- Face and shoulder milling for light shoulder milling operations
- Side and face milling cutter used for shoulder milling operation

Dedicated end mills and long edge cutters

- End mill with exchangeable, solid carbide head
- Long edge milling cutter
- Indexable insert end mill
- Solid carbide end mill

Deep shoulder milling

Edging with square shoulder milling cutters
### Profiling

Cutters for general use – roughing

[Image of Round insert end mill and Round insert cutter]

Cutters for general use – finishing

[Image of Solid carbide ball nose end mill and End mill with exchangeable, solid carbide head]

### Other methods

- Turn milling
- Blade milling

[Images of different milling tools]
Groove milling

Cutters for general use – radial groove milling

Cutters for grooving and parting off

Side and face mill for groove milling

Internal grooving and slotting

Cutters for general use – axial slot milling

End mill with exchangeable, solid carbide head

Solid carbide end mill

Indexable insert end mill

Long edge milling cutter

Thread milling and shallow grooving

Solid carbide end mill

Indexable insert end mill

Indexable insert cutter
Overview of milling operations

Modern milling is a very universal machining method. During the past few years, hand-in-hand with machine tool developments, milling has evolved into a method that machines a very broad range of configurations. The choice of methods in multi-axis machinery makes milling a strong contender for producing holes, cavities, surfaces that used to be turned, threads, etc.

Tooling developments have also contributed to the new possibilities, along with the gains in productivity, reliability and quality consistency that have been made in indexable insert and solid carbide technology.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Face milling</th>
<th>High-feed milling</th>
<th>Shoulder milling</th>
<th>Groove milling</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image1.png" alt="Face milling" /></td>
<td><img src="image2.png" alt="High-feed milling" /></td>
<td><img src="image3.png" alt="Shoulder milling" /></td>
<td><img src="image4.png" alt="Groove milling" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parting off</td>
<td>Chamfering</td>
<td>Profile milling</td>
<td>Turn milling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image5.png" alt="Parting off" /></td>
<td><img src="image6.png" alt="Chamfering" /></td>
<td><img src="image7.png" alt="Profile milling" /></td>
<td><img src="image8.png" alt="Turn milling" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plunge milling</td>
<td>Trochoidal milling</td>
<td>Circular milling</td>
<td>Linear ramping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image9.png" alt="Plunge milling" /></td>
<td><img src="image10.png" alt="Trochoidal milling" /></td>
<td><img src="image11.png" alt="Circular milling" /></td>
<td><img src="image12.png" alt="Linear ramping" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Helical interpolation</td>
<td>Thread milling</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Milling methods

Milling machines may be manually operated, mechanically automated, or digitally automated via computer numerical control (CNC).

Conventional milling methods

Vertical milling machines

In conventional 3-axis machines, milling most frequently entails the generation of flat faces, shoulders and slots.

Surfaces and forms, other than those described below, are increasing steadily as the number of five-axis machining centers and multi-task machines grows.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Face milling</th>
<th>High-feed milling</th>
<th>Shoulder milling</th>
<th>Groove milling</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image1" alt="Face milling" /></td>
<td><img src="image2" alt="High-feed milling" /></td>
<td><img src="image3" alt="Shoulder milling" /></td>
<td><img src="image4" alt="Groove milling" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parting off</th>
<th>Chamfering</th>
<th>Plunge milling</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image5" alt="Parting off" /></td>
<td><img src="image6" alt="Chamfering" /></td>
<td><img src="image7" alt="Plunge milling" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Advanced milling methods

Modern 4 to 5 axis machines

Today, machines are developing in all directions. Turning centers now have milling capability through driven tools, and machining centers have turning capability via turnmill or mill-turn machines. CAM developments mean that 5-axis machines are increasing.

The results of these trends and the development of methods put new demands and opportunities on the tooling, such as:

- Increased flexibility
- Fewer machines/setups to complete a component
- Reduced stability
- Longer tool lengths
- Lower depth of cut.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Profile milling</th>
<th>Turn milling</th>
<th>Trochoidal milling</th>
<th>Circular milling</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image1" alt="Profile milling" /></td>
<td><img src="image2" alt="Turn milling" /></td>
<td><img src="image3" alt="Trochoidal milling" /></td>
<td><img src="image4" alt="Circular milling" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Linear ramping</td>
<td>Helical interpolation</td>
<td>Thread milling</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Advanced milling methods

Modern 4 to 5 axis machines

Today, machines are developing in all directions. Turning centers now have milling capability through driven tools, and machining centers have turning capability via turnmill or mill-turn machines. CAM developments mean that 5-axis machines are increasing.

The results of these trends and the development of methods put new demands and opportunities on the tooling, such as:

- Increased flexibility
- Fewer machines/setups to complete a component
- Reduced stability
- Longer tool lengths
- Lower depth of cut.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Profile milling</th>
<th>Turn milling</th>
<th>Trochoidal milling</th>
<th>Circular milling</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image1" alt="Profile milling" /></td>
<td><img src="image2" alt="Turn milling" /></td>
<td><img src="image3" alt="Trochoidal milling" /></td>
<td><img src="image4" alt="Circular milling" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Linear ramping</td>
<td>Helical interpolation</td>
<td>Thread milling</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Advanced milling methods

Modern 4 to 5 axis machines

Today, machines are developing in all directions. Turning centers now have milling capability through driven tools, and machining centers have turning capability via turnmill or mill-turn machines. CAM developments mean that 5-axis machines are increasing.

The results of these trends and the development of methods put new demands and opportunities on the tooling, such as:

- Increased flexibility
- Fewer machines/setups to complete a component
- Reduced stability
- Longer tool lengths
- Lower depth of cut.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Profile milling</th>
<th>Turn milling</th>
<th>Trochoidal milling</th>
<th>Circular milling</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image1" alt="Profile milling" /></td>
<td><img src="image2" alt="Turn milling" /></td>
<td><img src="image3" alt="Trochoidal milling" /></td>
<td><img src="image4" alt="Circular milling" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Linear ramping</td>
<td>Helical interpolation</td>
<td>Thread milling</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Advanced milling methods

Modern 4 to 5 axis machines

Today, machines are developing in all directions. Turning centers now have milling capability through driven tools, and machining centers have turning capability via turnmill or mill-turn machines. CAM developments mean that 5-axis machines are increasing.

The results of these trends and the development of methods put new demands and opportunities on the tooling, such as:

- Increased flexibility
- Fewer machines/setups to complete a component
- Reduced stability
- Longer tool lengths
- Lower depth of cut.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Profile milling</th>
<th>Turn milling</th>
<th>Trochoidal milling</th>
<th>Circular milling</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image1" alt="Profile milling" /></td>
<td><img src="image2" alt="Turn milling" /></td>
<td><img src="image3" alt="Trochoidal milling" /></td>
<td><img src="image4" alt="Circular milling" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Linear ramping</td>
<td>Helical interpolation</td>
<td>Thread milling</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Advanced milling methods

Modern 4 to 5 axis machines

Today, machines are developing in all directions. Turning centers now have milling capability through driven tools, and machining centers have turning capability via turnmill or mill-turn machines. CAM developments mean that 5-axis machines are increasing.

The results of these trends and the development of methods put new demands and opportunities on the tooling, such as:

- Increased flexibility
- Fewer machines/setups to complete a component
- Reduced stability
- Longer tool lengths
- Lower depth of cut.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Profile milling</th>
<th>Turn milling</th>
<th>Trochoidal milling</th>
<th>Circular milling</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image1" alt="Profile milling" /></td>
<td><img src="image2" alt="Turn milling" /></td>
<td><img src="image3" alt="Trochoidal milling" /></td>
<td><img src="image4" alt="Circular milling" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Linear ramping</td>
<td>Helical interpolation</td>
<td>Thread milling</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Positioning of cutters for face milling

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of milling cutter</th>
<th>Considerations</th>
<th>Round inserts</th>
<th>10-25°</th>
<th>45°</th>
<th>90°</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Machine/spindle size</td>
<td>ISO 40, 50</td>
<td>ISO 40, 50</td>
<td>ISO 40, 50</td>
<td>ISO 30, 40, 50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stability requirement</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roughing</td>
<td>Very good</td>
<td>Good</td>
<td>Very good</td>
<td>Acceptable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finishing</td>
<td>Acceptable</td>
<td>Acceptable</td>
<td>Very good</td>
<td>Good</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cutting depth $a_p$</td>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>Small</td>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>Large</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Versatility</td>
<td>Very good</td>
<td>Good</td>
<td>Good</td>
<td>Very good</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Productivity</td>
<td>Very good</td>
<td>Very good</td>
<td>Very good</td>
<td>Good</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Parting and grooving**

- Threading
- Milling
- Drilling
- Boring
- Tool holding
- Machinability
- Other information

---

**ISO 40, 50 ISO 40, 50**

- 10-25°
- 45°
- 90°
Positioning of cutters for shoulder milling

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Considerations</th>
<th>90°</th>
<th>90°</th>
<th>90°</th>
<th>90°</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Machine/spindle size</td>
<td>ISO 40, 50</td>
<td>ISO 30, 40, 50</td>
<td>ISO 40, 50</td>
<td>ISO 30, 40, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stability requirement</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>Low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roughing</td>
<td>Very good</td>
<td>Good</td>
<td>Acceptable</td>
<td>Good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finishing</td>
<td>Acceptable</td>
<td>Acceptable</td>
<td>Very good</td>
<td>Good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cutting depth $a_p$</td>
<td>Large</td>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>Small</td>
<td>Large</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Material</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>Aluminum</td>
<td>Aluminum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Versatility</td>
<td>Very good</td>
<td>Very good</td>
<td>Acceptable</td>
<td>Good</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Positioning of cutters for profile milling

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of milling cutter</th>
<th>Considerations</th>
<th>Round inserts</th>
<th>Ball nose indexable</th>
<th>Ball nose exchangable</th>
<th>Ball nose solid carbide</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Machine/spindle size</td>
<td>ISO 40, 50</td>
<td>ISO 40, 50</td>
<td>ISO 30, 40</td>
<td>ISO 30, 40</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stability requirement</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roughing</td>
<td>Very good</td>
<td>Good</td>
<td>Acceptable</td>
<td>Acceptable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finishing</td>
<td>Acceptable</td>
<td>Acceptable</td>
<td>Very good</td>
<td>Very good</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cutting depth $a_p$</td>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>Small</td>
<td>Small</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Versatility</td>
<td>Very good</td>
<td>Very good</td>
<td>Very good</td>
<td>Very good</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Productivity</td>
<td>Very good</td>
<td>Good</td>
<td>Good</td>
<td>Good</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Positioning of cutters for slots and grooves

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Considerations</th>
<th>Groove Side and face</th>
<th>Grooving</th>
<th>Long edge</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Machine/spindle size</td>
<td>ISO 50</td>
<td>ISO 40, 50</td>
<td>ISO 40, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Groove open</td>
<td>Open</td>
<td>Open</td>
<td>Open</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Groove closed</td>
<td>Closed</td>
<td>Closed</td>
<td>Closed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cutting width</td>
<td>Small</td>
<td>Small</td>
<td>Large</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cutting depth $a_p$</td>
<td>Medium-Large</td>
<td>Small</td>
<td>Medium-Large</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Versatility</td>
<td>Limited</td>
<td>Good</td>
<td>Good</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Considerations</th>
<th>Indexable insert end mill</th>
<th>Exchangable-head end mill</th>
<th>Solid carbide end mill</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Machine/spindle size</td>
<td>ISO 30, 40, 50</td>
<td>ISO 30, 40, 50</td>
<td>ISO 30, 40, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Groove open</td>
<td>Open</td>
<td>Open</td>
<td>Open</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Groove closed</td>
<td>Closed</td>
<td>Closed</td>
<td>Closed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cutting width</td>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>Small</td>
<td>Small</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cutting depth $a_p$</td>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>Small</td>
<td>Large</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Versatility</td>
<td>Very good</td>
<td>Very good</td>
<td>Very good</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Choice of inserts and how to apply

The design of a modern milling insert

Definitions of terms and geometry design

Corner design

- Cutting edge reinforcement 0.13 mm (.005 inch)
- Rake angle 30°
- Primary land 11°.

Main cutting edge design

- Cutting edge reinforcement 0.13 mm (.005 inch)
- Rake angle 30°
- Primary land 17°.
Making the tool choice in milling

First choice
Operation stability
Cutter pitch

Low
Coarse pitch (-L)

Close pitch (-M)
Medium (-M)

Extra close pitch (-H)
Heavy (-H)

Wear resistant

Good conditions

Machining conditions/
Grades

Average conditions

Toughness

Difficult conditions

Type of application

Depth of cut, mm (inch)

Heavy milling
• Operation for maximum stock removal and/or severe conditions.
• Larger depth of cut and feed rate.
• Operations requiring highest edge security.

Medium milling
• Most applications – general purpose milling.
• Medium operations to light roughing.
• Medium depth of cut and feed rate.

Light milling
• Operations at small depth of cut and low feed rates.
• Operations requiring low cutting forces.
Selecting the insert geometry

Light (-L)
- Extra positive
- Light machining
- Low cutting forces
- Low feed rates.

Medium (-M)
- General purpose geometry
- Medium feed rates
- Medium operations to light roughing.

Heavy (-H)
- Reinforced cutting edge
- Heavy machining
- Highest edge security
- High feed rates.

Achieving good surface finish in milling

- Use wiper inserts for higher productivity and improved surface finish
- Limit the feed to 60% of the parallel land
- Mount the wiper inserts correctly
- Set the wiper inserts below other inserts.
How to select insert grade
Select the geometry and grade according to the application.

Define machining conditions

Good conditions

- Cutting depth 25% of max \(a_p\) or less
- Overhang under two times cutter diameter
- Continuous cuts
- Wet or dry machining.

Average conditions

- Cutting depth 50% of max \(a_p\) or more
- Overhang two to three times cutter diameter
- Interrupted cuts
- Wet or dry machining.

Difficult conditions

- Cutting depth 50% of max \(a_p\) or more
- Overhang over three times cutter diameter
- Interrupted cuts
- Wet or dry machining.
Dedicated grades minimize tool wear development

The workpiece material influences the wear during the cutting action in different ways. Therefore dedicated grades have been developed to cope with the basic wear mechanisms, e.g.:

- Flank wear, crater wear and plastic deformation in steel
- Built-up edge and notch wear in stainless steel
- Flank wear and plastic deformation in cast iron.

Select geometry and grade depending on the type of workpiece material and type of application.
Choice of cutter and how to apply

High performance face milling cutters for small to medium cutting depths.

Making the tool choice in milling

First choice
Operation stability
Cutter pitch

Low
Coarse pitch (-L)

High
Extra close pitch (-H)

Close pitch (-M)
Medium (-M)

Light (-L)
Wear resistant

Good conditions

Machining conditions/ Grades

Average conditions

Toughness

Difficult conditions

Choice of cutter and how to apply
Selecting cutter pitches

**Low**
- Coarse pitch (-L)
  - Reduced number of inserts
  - Limited stability
  - Long overhang
  - Small machines/limited horsepower
  - Deep, full slotting operations
  - Differential pitch.

**First choice**
- Operation stability

**Close pitch (-M)**
- General purpose
- Suitable for mixed production
- Small to medium machines
- Usually first choice.

**High**
- Extra close pitch (-H)
  - High number of inserts for maximum productivity
  - Stable conditions
  - Short chipping materials
  - Heat resistant materials.

**Limited stability**

**Long overhang**

**Limited horsepower**

Cutter pitch

Stable conditions

Cast iron (CMC 08)

Heat resistant alloys (CMC 20)
### Differential pitch

In general, the coarser the cutter pitch, the least chance of harmonic vibration. Sometimes, replacing a 16-tooth cutter with a 12-tooth tool ends chatter altogether. A differential-pitched cutter may be required in more difficult cases to eliminate troublesome harmonics.

Differential pitch cutters have uneven tooth spacing, which impacts the vibration amplitude of each tooth. Reducing the risk of vibration.

---

**Cutting forces and entering angle**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>90° entering angle</th>
<th>45° entering angle</th>
<th>Round insert cutters</th>
<th>10° entering angle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Differential pitch reduces the risk of vibration.
Axial and radial cutting forces

Effect of entering angle (90°)

- Thin-walled components
- Axially weak fixtured components
- Square shoulder
- \( h_{ex} = f_z \) (in case \( a_e > 50\% \times DC \)).

Effect of entering angle (45°)

- General purpose 1st choice
- Reduced vibration on long tool overhang
- Chip thinning effect allows increased productivity
- \( f_z = 1.41 \times h_{ex} \) (Compensating for entering angle).

Effect of entering angle (Variable)

On round inserts, the chip load and entering angle vary with the depth of cut.

- Strongest cutting edge with multiple indexes
- General purpose cutter
- Increased chip thinning effect for heat resistant alloys
- \( h_{ex} = \text{depends on } a_p \).

10° entering angle

- High-feed milling cutters
- A thin chip is generated, allows very high feeds per tooth
- Axial cutting force is directed towards the spindle and stabilize it.
Feed compensation for different entering angles

\[ f_z = h_{\text{ex}} \]

\[ 90° = (f_z \text{ or } h_{\text{ex}}) \times 1.0 \]

\[ 45° = (f_z \text{ or } h_{\text{ex}}) \times 1.41 \]

\[ \sqrt{\frac{iC}{a_p}} \]

\[ \text{Round} = \text{depends on } a_p \]

\[ \text{Formula for compensation in turning} \]

\[ 10° = (f_z \text{ or } h_{\text{ex}}) \times 5.76 \]

Formulas for cutters with round inserts

Max. cutting diameter at a specific depth (inch).

\[ D_{\text{cap}} = DC + \sqrt{iC^2 - (iC - 2 \times a_p)^2} \]

Facemilling round insert \((a_p < iC/2)\) (inch).

\[ f_z = \frac{h_{\text{ex}} \times iC}{2 \times \sqrt{a_p \times iC - a_p^2}} \]

Side milling \((a_e < D_{\text{cap}}/2)\) and round insert \((a_p < iC/2)\) (inch).

\[ f_z = \frac{h_{\text{ex}} \times iC \times D_{\text{cap}}}{4 \times \sqrt{a_p \times iC - a_p^2} \times \sqrt{D_{\text{cap}} \times a_e - a_e^2}} \]
Calculating cutting data

Example in face milling

Given:

- Cutting speed, \( v_c = 225 \text{ m/min (738 ft/min)} \)
- Feed per tooth, \( f_z = 0.21 \text{ mm (0.0082 inch)} \)
- Number of cutter teeth, \( z_n = 5 \)
- Cutter diameter, \( DC = 125 \text{ mm (4.921 inch)} \)
- Cutting depth, \( a_p = 4 \text{ mm (0.157 inch)} \)
- Working engagement, \( a_e = 85 \text{ mm (3.346 inch)} \)

Need:

- Spindle speed, \( n \) (rpm)
- Table feed, \( v_f \) (mm/min (inch/min))
- Metal removal rate, \( Q \) (cm³/min (inch³/min))
- Power consumption kW (Hp)

Spindle speed

Given: \( v_c = 225 \text{ m/min (738 ft/min)} \)

Metric

\[
 n = \frac{v_c \times 1000}{\pi \times DC} \quad \text{(rpm)}
\]

\[
 n = \frac{225 \times 1000}{3.14 \times 125} = 575 \text{ rpm}
\]

Inch

\[
 n = \frac{v_c \times 12}{\pi \times DC} \quad \text{(rpm)}
\]

\[
 n = \frac{738 \times 12}{3.14 \times 4.921} = 575 \text{ rpm}
\]

Table feed

Given: \( n = 575 \text{ rpm} \)

Metric

\[
 v_f = n \times f_z \times z_n \quad \text{(mm/min)}
\]

\[
 v_f = 575 \times 0.21 \times 5 = 600 \text{ mm/min}
\]

Inch

\[
 v_f = n \times f_z \times z_n \quad \text{(inch/min)}
\]

\[
 v_f = 575 \times 0.0082 \times 5 = 23.6 \text{ inch/min}
\]

Metal removal rate

Given \( v_f = 600 \text{ mm/min (23.6 inch/min)} \)

Metric

\[
 Q = \frac{a_p \times a_e \times v_f}{1000} \quad \text{(cm³/min)}
\]

\[
 Q = \frac{4 \times 85 \times 600}{1000} = 204 \text{ cm³/min}
\]

Inch

\[
 Q = \frac{a_p \times a_e \times v_f}{1000} \quad \text{(inch³/min)}
\]

\[
 Q = 0.157 \times 3.346 \times 23.6 = 12.4 \text{ inch³/min}
\]
Net power consumption

Given: Material CMC 02.1

Metric

\[
P_c = \frac{a_e \times a_p \times v_f \times k_c}{60 \times 10^6} \quad \text{(kW)}
\]

Inch

\[
P_c = \frac{a_e \times a_p \times v_f \times k_c}{396 \times 10^3} \quad \text{(Hp)}
\]

Milling with large engagement

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ISO</th>
<th>CMC No.</th>
<th>Material</th>
<th>Specific cutting force for 1</th>
<th>Hardness Brinnell</th>
<th>CTS50</th>
<th>Max chip thickness</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>N/mm²</td>
<td></td>
<td>HB</td>
<td>mc</td>
<td>Cutting speed vF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>01.1</td>
<td>Unalloyed</td>
<td>1500</td>
<td>125</td>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>430–390–50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>01.2</td>
<td>C = 0.10 – 0.25%</td>
<td>1600</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>385–350–15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>01.3</td>
<td>C = 0.25 – 0.50%</td>
<td>1700</td>
<td>170</td>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>365–330–00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>01.4</td>
<td>C = 0.55 – 0.80%</td>
<td>1800</td>
<td>210</td>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>315–290–60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>01.5</td>
<td></td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>235–210–95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>02.1</td>
<td></td>
<td>Low alloyed (alloying elements 5%)</td>
<td>1700</td>
<td>175</td>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>300–275–45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>02.2</td>
<td>Non-hardened</td>
<td>1900</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>235–210–95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>03.11</td>
<td></td>
<td>High alloyed (alloying elements &gt; 5%)</td>
<td>1950</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>230–205–65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>03.12</td>
<td>Hardened tool steel</td>
<td>2150</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>190–170–55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>03.21</td>
<td>Annealed</td>
<td>2900</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>165–150–35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>03.22</td>
<td>1950</td>
<td>380</td>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>105–90–65</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>06.1</td>
<td></td>
<td>Low alloyed (alloying elements 5%)</td>
<td>1400</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>305–280–50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>06.2</td>
<td>Unalloyed</td>
<td>1600</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>245–220–00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>06.3</td>
<td>High alloyed (alloying elements &gt; 5%)</td>
<td>1950</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>180–160–45</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\[
P_c = \frac{85 \times 4 \times 600 \times 1700}{60 \times 10^6} = 5.8 \text{ kW}
\]

\[
P_c = \frac{3.346 \times 0.157 \times 23.6 \times 246500}{396 \times 10^3} = 7.7 \text{ Hp}
\]

The calculation above is approximate and valid for an average chip thickness \(h_m\) of 1 mm (0.039 inch).

For a more accurate value of power consumption \(P_c\) the \(k_c\) value should be calculated accordingly.

Metric

\[
k_c = k_{c1} \times h_m^{-m_c} \times \left(1 - \frac{\gamma_o}{100}\right) \quad \text{(N/mm²)}
\]

Inch

\[
k_c = k_{c1} \times \left(\frac{0.039}{h_m}\right)^{m_c} \times \left(1 - \frac{\gamma_o}{100}\right) \quad \text{(lbs/inch²)}
\]

\[
h_m = \text{Average chip thickness}
\]

\[
\gamma_o = \text{Insert rake angle}
\]

\[
m_c = \text{Chip thickness compensation factor}
\]

\[
k_c = \text{Specific cutting force}
\]

\[
k_{c1} = \text{Specific cutting force for average chip thickness 1 mm (0.039 inch)}.
\]
Troubleshooting

Application hints for milling

Power capacity
• Check power capability and machine rigidity, making sure that the machine can handle the cutter diameter required.

Stability of work piece
• Condition and considerations of component clamping.

Overhang
• Machine with the shortest possible tool overhang on the spindle.

Select correct cutter pitch
• Use the correct cutter pitch for the operation to ensure that there are not too many inserts engaged in cut, as this may cause vibration.

Cutting engagement
• Ensure there is sufficient insert engagement with narrow workpieces or when milling over voids.

Choice of insert geometry
• Use positive geometry indexable inserts whenever possible for smooth cutting action and lowest power consumption.

Use correct feed
• Ensure that the right feed per insert is used to achieve the right cutting action by use of the recommended maximum chip thickness.

Cutting direction
• Use climb (down) milling whenever possible.

Component consideration
• Work piece material and configuration. Also quality demands on the surface to be machined.
Choice of insert grade
• Select grade depending on the type of workpiece material and type of application.

Dampened milling tools
• For longer overhang of more than 4 times the tool diameter, vibration tendencies can become more apparent, and dampened cutters can improve the productivity radically.

Entering angle
• Select the most suitable entering angle.

Cutter diameter
• Select the right diameter in relation to the workpiece width.

Cutter position
• Position the milling cutter correctly.

Cutter entrance and exit
• It can be seen that by rolling into cut, the chip thickness on exit is always zero, allowing higher feed and longer tool life.

Coolant
• Only use coolant if considered necessary. Milling is generally performed better without.

Maintenance
• Follow tool maintenance recommendations and monitor tool wear.
Drilling

Drilling covers methods of making cylindrical holes in a workpiece with metal cutting tools.

- Theory
- Selection procedure
- System overview
- How to apply
- Hole quality and tolerances
- Troubleshooting
The drilling process

• The drill is always engulfed in the work-piece, leaving no view of the operation.
• Chips must be controlled.
• Chip evacuation is essential; it affects hole quality, tool life and reliability.

Four common drilling methods

Drilling

- Drilling
- Trepanning
- Chamfer drilling
- Step drilling

Drilling is classified into four common methods:
The most common holes are:

1. Holes with clearance for bolts
2. Holes with a screw thread
3. Countersink holes
4. Pressed fit holes
5. Slip fit holes
6. Holes that form channels
7. Holes to remove weight for balancing.
Maximum hole depth

Chip evacuation

Hole depth (LU) determines the choice of tool.

Maximum hole depth is a function of hole diameter DC and hole depth (LU).

Example: max hole depth LU = 3 x DC.
Drilling theory
Cutting speeds for indexable drills

• Cutting speed ($v_c$) for indexable drills declines from 100% at the periphery to zero at the center.
• The central insert operates from cutting speed zero to approx. 50% of $v_c$ max. The peripheral insert works from 50% of $v_c$ max up to 100% of $v_c$ max.
• One effective cutting edge/rev: $= z_c$.

Cutting speeds for solid and exchangeable tip drills

• Two effective cutting edges, from the center to the periphery.
• Two edges/rev: $= z_c$. 
Solid carbide drill (SCD) vs. high speed drills (HSS)

Point angle and chisel edge

- Chisel edge is practically eliminated with the solid carbide drill.
- The axial cutting force is reduced considerably, because the chisel edge is eliminated on solid carbide drills.
- This results in better centering features and cuts chips close to the center of the drill point. This eliminates the need for a center drill.

**Solid carbide drill**

- 140° point angle

**HSS drill**

- 118° point angle

1. Main cutting edge
2. Chisel edge
3. Primary clearance
4. Secondary clearance
5. Flute
6. Margin
7. First split
8. Negative chamfer

**Solid carbide drill - Advantages**

- Chisel edge is practically eliminated
- The main cutting edge reaches the center point
- Gives longer life and productivity
- Lower thrust and torque
- Better tolerances.
Definitions of terms

Cutting speed

Cutting speeds for indexable drills

Cutting speed \( v_c \) for indexable drills declines from 100 % at the periphery to zero at the center.

The central insert operates from cutting speed zero to approx. 50% of \( v_c \) max.
The peripheral insert works from 50% of \( v_c \) max up to 100% of \( v_c \) max.

One effective cutting edge/rev: = \( z_c \).

Cutting speeds for solid and exchangeable tip drills

Two edges, from the center to the periphery.

Two edges/rev: = \( z_c \).

Productivity in drilling is strongly related to the penetration rate, \( v_f \).

Definitions of terms

Cutting speed

\[
\begin{align*}
n & = \text{spindle speed (rpm)} \\
v_c & = \text{cutting speed m/min (ft/min)} \\
f_n & = \text{feed per revolution mm/r} \\
\text{(inch/r)} \\
v_f & = \text{penetration rate mm/min} \\
\text{(inch/min)} \\
DC & = \text{drill diameter mm (inch)}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Metric} & \\
v_c & = \frac{\pi \times DC \times n}{1000} \text{ m/min} \\
\text{Inch} & \\
v_c & = \frac{\pi \times DC \times n}{12} \text{ ft/min} \\
v_f & = f_n \times n \text{ mm/min (inch/min)}
\end{align*}
\]
Effects of cutting speed – $v_c$ m/min (ft/min)

- Affects the power $P_c$ kW (Hp) and torque $M_c$ Nm (lbf-ft).
- The largest factor determining tool life.
- Higher speed generates higher temperature and increased flank wear, especially on the peripheral corner.
- Higher speed is beneficial for chip formation in long chipping, soft materials, i.e., low carbon steel.
- Affects sound levels.

Too high cutting speed causes:
- rapid flank wear
- plastic deformation
- poor hole quality
- bad hole tolerance.

Too low cutting speed causes:
- built-up edge
- bad chip evacuation
- longer time in cut
- higher risk of drill breakage
- reduced hole quality.
Feed rate

Effects of feed rate – $f_n$ mm/r (inch/r)

- Affects the feed force $F_f$ (N), power $P_c$ kW (Hp) and torque $M_c$ Nm (lbf-ft).
- Controls chip formation.
- Contributes to hole quality.
- Primarily influences surface finish.
- Contributes to mechanical and thermal stress.

\[
f_n = f_z \times 2 \quad \text{mm/r (inch/r)}
\]

High feed rate:
- harder chip breaking
- reduced time in cut.

Low feed rate:
- longer, thinner chips
- quality improvement
- accelerated tool wear
- longer time in cut.

*Note: Feed rate must correlate with cutting speed.
### Approximate calculation of power consumption


\[ P_c = \frac{f_n \times v_c \times DC \times k_{c1}}{240 \times 10^3} \text{ kW} \]

\[ P_c = \frac{f_n \times v_c \times DC \times k_{c1}}{132 \times 10^3} \text{ Hp} \]

**ISO P**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Material</th>
<th>Specific cutting force ( k_{c1} )</th>
<th>Specific cutting force ( k_{c1} )</th>
<th>Hardness Brinell</th>
<th>mc</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Steel Unalloyed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C = 0.1-0.25%</td>
<td>1500</td>
<td>216.500</td>
<td>125</td>
<td>0.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C = 0.25-0.55%</td>
<td>1600</td>
<td>233.000</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>0.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C = 0.55-0.80%</td>
<td>1700</td>
<td>247.000</td>
<td>170</td>
<td>0.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High carbon steel, annealed</td>
<td>1800</td>
<td>260.500</td>
<td>210</td>
<td>0.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hardened and tempered</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>291.500</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>0.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low alloyed (alloying elements ≤ 5%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-hardened</td>
<td>1700</td>
<td>246.500</td>
<td>175</td>
<td>0.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hardened and tempered</td>
<td>1900</td>
<td>278.500</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>0.25</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For information about the \( k_{c1} \) value, see page H16.
Accurate calculation of power consumption

CoroDrill® 880

\[
P_c = \frac{f_n \times v_c \times DC \times k_c}{240 \times 10^3} \quad \text{kW}
\]

CoroDrill® Delta-C

\[
P_c = \frac{f_n \times v_c \times DC \times k_c}{132 \times 10^3} \quad \text{Hp}
\]

\[
k_c = k_c_1 \times (f_z \times \sin \text{KAPR})^m_c \times \left(1 - \frac{\gamma_0}{100}\right)
\]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ISO P</th>
<th>CMC No.</th>
<th>Material</th>
<th>Specific cutting force $k_c_1$ N/mm$^2$</th>
<th>Specific cutting force $k_c_1$ lbs/in$^2$</th>
<th>Hardness Brinell HB</th>
<th>mc</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P1.1.Z.AN</td>
<td>01.1</td>
<td>Steel Unalloyed</td>
<td>1500</td>
<td>216.500</td>
<td>125</td>
<td>0.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P1.2.Z.AN</td>
<td>01.2</td>
<td>C = 0.1-0.25%</td>
<td>1600</td>
<td>233.000</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>0.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P1.3.Z.AN</td>
<td>01.3</td>
<td>C = 0.25-0.55%</td>
<td>1700</td>
<td>247.000</td>
<td>170</td>
<td>0.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P1.3.Z.AN</td>
<td>01.4</td>
<td>High carbon steel, annealed</td>
<td>1800</td>
<td>260.500</td>
<td>210</td>
<td>0.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P1.3.Z.HT</td>
<td>01.5</td>
<td>Hardened and tempered</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>291.500</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>0.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P2.1.Z.AN</td>
<td>02.1</td>
<td>Low alloyed (alloying elements ≤ 5%)</td>
<td>1700</td>
<td>246.500</td>
<td>175</td>
<td>0.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P2.5.Z.HT</td>
<td>02.2</td>
<td>Non-hardened</td>
<td>1900</td>
<td>278.500</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>0.25</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For information about the $k_c_1$ value, see page H16.
Calculation of torque and feed force

\[
\begin{align*}
F_f &\approx 0.5 \times k_c \times \frac{DC}{2} \times f_n \times \sin KAPR \ (N) \\
M_c &= \frac{P_c \times 30 \times 10^3}{\pi \times n} \ (Nm) \\
M_c &= \frac{P_c \times 16501}{\pi \times n} \ (lbf \ ft)
\end{align*}
\]

\( n \) = Spindle speed (rpm)  \\
\( f_n \) = Feed per revolution mm/rev (inch/rev)  \\
\( DC \) = Drill diameter mm (inch)  \\
\( k_{c1} \) = Specific cutting force N/mm\(^2\) (lbf ft/inch\(^2\))  \\
\( F_f \) = Feed force (N)  \\
\( M_c \) = Torque Nm (lbf ft)
Tool selection procedure

Production planning process

1. Component
   - Hole dimension and quality
   - Workpiece material, shape and quantity

2. Machine
   - Machine parameters

3. Choice of tool
   - Type of tool and machining method

4. How to apply
   - Cutting data, coolant, etc.

5. Troubleshooting
   - Remedies and solutions
1. Component and the workpiece material

**Material:**
- Machinability
- Chip breaking
- Hardness
- Alloy elements.

**Component:**
- Is the component rotation symmetric? Use a rotating or stationary drill?
- Clamping, hole size and depth. Also is the component sensitive to feed force and/or vibrations?
- Is a tool extension needed to reach the surface where the hole will be drilled i.e. long tool overhangs?
- Component features, does something complicate the process? Are there inclined, concave or convex surfaces? Crossing holes?

2. Important machine considerations

**Condition of the machine:**
- Machine stability
- Spindle speed
- Coolant supply
- Coolant flow and pressure
- Clamping of the workpiece
- Horizontal or vertical spindle
- Power and torque
- Tool magazine.
3. Choice of drilling tools

Different ways to make a hole

The basic parameters are:
- Diameter
- Depth
- Quality (tolerance, surface finish, straightness).

The hole type, and the required precision affect tool choice.

Drilling can be affected by irregular or angled entry/exit surfaces and by cross holes.

Drilling

Step/chamfer drilling

Helical interpolation

Advantages
- Simple standard tools
- Relatively flexible.

Advantages
- Reduces the number of operations
- Fastest way to make a step/chamfer hole.

Advantages
- Simple standard tools
- Very flexible
- Low cutting forces.

Disadvantages
- Two tools, adapters and basic holders
- Requires an extra tool and operation if it is a step/chamfer hole
- Depending on choice
  - Productivity
  - Hole quality.

Disadvantages
- Requires more power and stability
- Less flexibility.

Disadvantages
- Longer cycle times.

Drilling

Step/chamfer drilling

Helical interpolation

Selection procedure
4. How to apply

Important application considerations

Tool holding

- Always use shortest possible drill and overhang to reduce tool deflection and vibrations, keeping in mind proper chip evacuation.
- For best stability and hole quality, use modular tools, hydro-mechanical or hydraulic holding tools.

Tool runout

- Minimum tool runout is essential for successful drilling.

Chip evacuation and cutting fluid

- Chip formation and evacuation is the dominant factor in drilling and affects hole quality.

Grade and geometry

- Use recommended grade and geometry.
- Use recommended cutting parameters.
- To ensure a stable process, make sure to achieve good chip formation by adjusting cutting parameters.
5. Troubleshooting

Some areas to consider

Insert wear and tool life
- Check wear pattern and if necessary adjust cutting data accordingly or change grade.

Chip evacuation
- Check chip breaking and cutting fluid supply, if necessary change chip breaker and/or cutting parameters accordingly.

Hole quality and tolerances
- Check clamping of drill/workpiece, feed rate, machine conditions and chip evacuation.

Cutting data
- Correct cutting speed and feed rate is essential for high productivity and tool life.
Drilling tools

Drilling tools covering diameters from 0.30 mm up to 110 mm (.0118 inch up to 4.331 inch) and even larger as engineered products.

Length diameter ratio

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drill diameter, DC (mm)</th>
<th>5xDC</th>
<th>10xDC</th>
<th>15xDC</th>
<th>20xDC</th>
<th>30xDC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>(0.394)</td>
<td>(0.787)</td>
<td>(1.181)</td>
<td>(1.575)</td>
<td>(1.969)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Drill diameter, DC (inch)

- Solid carbide drill
- Exchangeable tip drill
- Short hole drill
- Deep hole drill
- Large diameter drill
- Trepanning drill
Choice of drilling tools
Step and chamfer drilling

Other methods

Radial adjusted drilling
Solid drilling
Helical interpolation
Plunge drilling
Trepanning
Diameter and hole depth

Positioning of short hole drills

Indexable insert drills

Always to be considered as the first choice due to lower cost per hole. They are also very versatile tools.

Application areas

• Medium and large diameter holes
• Medium tolerance demands
• Blind holes requiring a “flat” bottom
• Plunge drilling or boring operations.

Solid carbide drills

First choice for smaller diameters and when closer hole tolerance is required.

• Small diameter
• Close or precision tolerance holes
• Short to relatively deep holes.

Exchangeable tip drills

First choice for medium diameter holes where the exchangeable tip provides for an economical solution.

• Medium diameter
• Close hole tolerances
• Steel body provide toughness
• Short to relatively deep holes.
Indexable insert drills

The basic drill

- The most economical way to produce a hole.
- For all workpiece materials.
- Standard, Tailor Made and special drills available.
- A versatile tool that can do more than just drilling.

Mounting options

Different mounting options are available, which enables the user to mount the drill to almost all machine configurations. Today, machine tool manufacturers are offering mounting options integrated to the spindle.

Cylindrical shank

Coromant Capto® coupling

Cylindrical with flat

P-shank

Whistle Notch

Other modular systems
Solid carbide drills

The basic choice

Material-optimized drills

Application-optimized drills

Chamfer drill

Precision drill for hard steel

Short hole drills – ISO material groups

ISO material group

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Solid carbide drills</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>K</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>H</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Exchangeable tip drills</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indexable insert drills</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

E 24
Large hole diameters

Large diameter drill

Indexable insert drills are available in diameters up to 84 mm (3.307 inch).

Trepanning drill

Trepanning is used for larger hole diameters and where machine power is limited, because it is not as power consuming as solid drilling. Trepanning drills are available up to diameter 110 mm (4.331 inch).

Note: These drills are for a through hole application only.

Milling, helical interpolation

A milling cutter with helical or circular interpolation can be used instead of drills or boring tools. The method is less productive but can be an alternative when chip breaking is a problem.
How to apply
Indexable insert drills

Setup routine

- Use the shortest possible drill.
- Check programming length.
- Start drilling with a mid-range recommended feed rate and cutting speed to a depth of 3.2 mm (.125 inch).
- Check chip formation and measure hole size.
- Inspect the drill to make sure no drill-to-hole rubbing is taking place.
- Increase or decrease feed rate and/or cutting speed according to chip formation, vibration, hole-surface quality, etc.

Chip formation - Indexable

- Improved chip evacuation is initially achieved by improving chip formation.
- Long chips may cause chip jamming in the drill flutes.
- Also the surface finish may be affected and the insert or tool may be at risk.
- Rectification involves selecting the correct insert geometry and adjusting cutting data.
- Apply insert geometries to suit different materials and cutting conditions.
Rotating indexable drill

Alignment

• If over- or under-sized holes are produced or if the center insert tends to chip, it is often because the drill is off center.

• Turning the drill 180° in its holder may solve this problem.

• But it is important to ensure that the center axis of the drill and the axis of rotation are parallel in order to achieve accurate holes.

• The machine spindle and the holder must be in good condition.

Radial adjustment

Adjustable holder

• Setting is achieved by turning the scale ring surrounding the holder, marked in increments of 0.05 mm (.002 inch), indicating a diametrical movement of the tool.

• Radial adjustment -0.2 /+0.7 mm (-.008 /+.028 inch). Note that the adjustment range for the drill should not be exceeded. (Maximum adjustment can be seen on the ordering pages in the catalog).

• It may be necessary to reduce the feed/rev \( (f_v) \) due to longer tool overhang and less balanced cutting forces created by the offsetting.

• Sleeves are used to adapt various ISO shank sizes for one holder.
Rotating drill – eccentric sleeve

Drill diameter can be adjusted for closer hole tolerance. The adjustment range is approx. ±0.3 mm (±.012), but adjustment in the negative direction should be made only if the drill produces an oversized hole (not in order to achieve undersized holes).

- One dot increases/decreases the diameter by 0.10 mm (.004 inch).
- Increase the diameter by turning the sleeve clockwise.
- Decrease the diameter by turning the sleeve counterclockwise.
- Use both screws to clamp the drill in the fixture and make sure the bolts in the holder are long enough.
Non-rotating drill
Alignment

• The total runout between the center line of the machine and the workpiece must not exceed 0.03 mm (.001 inch).

• The drill should be mounted so that the top face of the peripheral insert is parallel to the machine’s transverse movement (usually X-axis).

Dial indicator and test bar

• Misalignment also has the effect of radial offsetting, which produces either an over- or under-sized hole.

• Testing can be carried out with a dial indicator together with a test bar.

Drill with four flats

• Another way is by making a drill with four flats equally positioned around the drill shank.

• Make holes with the drill mounted in each of the four flat positions. Hole measurement will indicate the state of machine alignment.
Deflection of turret

Problem solving

• Deflection of the turret on a CNC lathe can be caused by the feed force.

• First, check if you can minimize torque by mounting the tool differently. Position B is preferable to position A.

• To avoid wear on the drill body and retraction marks in the hole, mount the drill with the peripheral insert as shown in the picture.

• Finally, a reduction of the feed/revolution ($f_n$) can be made to minimize the feed force.
Radial offset

- Holes can be drilled larger than the nominal size of the drill as well as enlarged and finished with a subsequent boring pass.

- Non-rotating indexable insert drills can also be used to generate tapered holes.

- Also chamfering and reliefs can be machined with the drill.

- A hole which is to be threaded can be prepared in one pass along with chamfering.

Irregular surfaces and pre-drilled holes

When entering or exiting an irregular surface there is a risk of the inserts chipping.

- The feed rate should therefore be reduced.

- A pre-drilled hole should be small rather than large - not more than 25% of the drill diameter - to avoid drill deflection.

- However, reduced feed does allow broad machining of pre-drilled holes.
Entering non-flat surfaces

- Convex surface
  - Normally no feed reduction needed.

- Concave surface
  - Reduce feed to 1/3 of original feed rate.

- Inclined surface
  - With entering angle of 2°–89°, reduce feed to 1/3 of original feed rate.

- Irregular surfaces
  - Reduce feed 1/3 of original feed rate.

Solid carbide and exchangeable tip drills

Alignment

Rotating drill

Minimum tool runout is one of the main criteria for successful use of solid carbide drills.

The runout should not exceed 0.02 mm (.0008 inch) in order to achieve:

- close hole tolerance
- good surface finish
- long and consistent tool life.

Stationary drill

0.02 mm (.0008 inch)
Tool holding

- A collet and tool shank in bad condition will ruin an otherwise perfect setup.
- Make sure that the TIR (Total Indicator Readout) is within 0.02 mm (.0008 inch).
- An unacceptable runout can be temporarily reduced by turning the drill or the collet 90° or 180° to find lowest TIR.

For best performance use hydro-mechanical, hydraulic or shrink fit chuck.

Solid carbide and exchangeable tip drills

Solid carbide drills
- Not recommended due to risk of chipping on cutting edge.

Exchangeable-tip drills
- Not possible to enlarge existing holes by counter-boring because no chip breaking will take place.
How to apply

Entering non-flat surfaces

When entering non-flat surfaces there is a risk of drill deflection. To avoid this, the feed can be reduced when entering.

Convex surface
Drill if radius is > 4 times drill diameter and the hole is perpendicular to the radius.
Reduce feed 50% of normal rate during entrance.

Concave surface
Drill if radius is > 15 times drill diameter and the hole is perpendicular to the radius.
Reduce feed 25% of normal rate during entrance.

Inclined surface
Inclinations up to 10°, reduce the feed to 1/3 of normal feed rate during entrance. More than 10°, not recommended. Mill a small flat on surface, then drill the hole.

Irregular surfaces
Reduce feed rate to ¼ of normal rate to avoid chipping on the cutting edges.

Chip formation – Solid carbide and exchangeable tip drills

• Improved chip evacuation is initially achieved by improving chip formation.
• Long chips may cause chip jamming in the drill flutes.
• Also the surface finish may be affected and the insert or tool may be at risk.
• Make sure the right cutting data and drill/tip geometry is used to suit different materials and cutting conditions.

Start chip

Note: The start chip from entry into the workpiece is always long and does not create any problems.

Excellent
Acceptable
Chip jamming
Coolant supply

Internal coolant supply
- Always to be preferred especially in long-chipping materials and when drilling deeper holes (4-5 x DC).

External coolant supply
- Can be used when chip formation is good and when the hole depth is shallow.

Compressed air, minimal lubrication or dry drilling
- Can be successful in favorable conditions, but is generally not recommended.

The cutting fluid

Soluble oil (emulsion)
- 5 to 12% oil (10-25% for stainless steels).
- EP (extreme pressure) additives.

Neat oil
- always with EP additives.
- increases tool life in ISO-M and ISO-S applications
- both solid carbide and indexable insert drills work well with neat oil.

Mist cutting fluid or minimal lubrication
- can be used with good performance in materials with favorable chip forming.

Dry drilling, without any coolant
- can be performed in short-chipping materials.
- hole depths up to 3 times the diameter.
- preferably in horizontal applications.
- tool life will be influenced negatively.
How to apply

Coolant – Important for successful performance

Coolant supply is essential in drilling and influences:
- chip evacuation
- hole quality
- tool life.

- The cubic capacity of the coolant tank should be between 5-10 times larger than the volume of coolant that the pump supplies per minute.
- The volume capacity can be checked using a stopwatch and a suitably-sized bucket.

Coolant

Internal or external

**Internal coolant supply**
- Is always to be preferred to avoid chip jamming.
- Should always be used at hole depths above 3 times the diameter.
- A horizontal drill should have a flow of coolant coming out of the drill without any downward drop for at least 30 cm (12”).

**External coolant supply**
- Can be acceptable in short-chipping materials.
- To improve chip evacuation at least one coolant nozzle (two if drill is stationary) should be directed close to the tool axis.
- Can sometimes help to avoid built-up edge formation due to a higher edge temperature.

**Compressed air, minimal lubrication or dry drilling**
- Can be used with an Exchangeable tip drill under favorable conditions in short chipping materials.
- Solid carbide drills work well in these types of applications.
Safety precautions

Internal coolant supply

- Guarding against through-hole discs is important to avoid damage or injury, especially when using non-rotating drills.

External coolant supply

- A rotation stop may be necessary for rotating drills.
- If the coolant contains chip particles, the slit seatings may seize and as a result the housing will rotate.
- If the rotating connector has not been used for a long time, check that the holder rotates in the housing before the machine spindle is started.
Hole quality and tolerance

Steps to ensure good hole quality in drilling

- The machine tool should be in good condition.
- Tool holding influences hole quality and tool life.
- Use the shortest possible drill for maximum stability.
- Chip breaking and chip evacuation must always be satisfactory.
- Coolant supply and coolant pressure is important.

Hole dimensions are characterized by three parameters:

- nominal value (the theoretical exact value)
- tolerance width (a number), e.g., IT 7 according to ISO
- position of the tolerance (designated by capital letters according to ISO).

\[ D_{\text{max}} - D_{\text{min}} \text{ is the tolerance width, also called, e.g., IT 7.} \]
Hole quality and tolerance

### Hole tolerance according to ISO

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tolerance</th>
<th>Diameter range, mm/inch</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3–6</td>
<td>6–10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IT6</td>
<td>0.008</td>
<td>0.009</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.0003</td>
<td>.0004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IT7</td>
<td>0.012</td>
<td>0.015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.0005</td>
<td>.0006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IT8</td>
<td>0.018</td>
<td>0.022</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.0007</td>
<td>.0009</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IT9</td>
<td>0.030</td>
<td>0.036</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.0012</td>
<td>.0014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IT10</td>
<td>0.048</td>
<td>0.058</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.0019</td>
<td>.0022</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IT11</td>
<td>0.075</td>
<td>0.090</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.0030</td>
<td>.0035</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IT12</td>
<td>0.120</td>
<td>0.150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.0047</td>
<td>.0059</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IT13</td>
<td>0.180</td>
<td>0.220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.0071</td>
<td>.0087</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1) Holes for threading with fluteless taps (rolled threads)

- The lower the IT-number, the closer the tolerance.
- The tolerance for one IT-class grows with larger diameters.

Example:

**Ø 15.00 mm (.591 inch)**
- Nominal value: 15.00 mm (.591 inch)
- Tolerance width: 0.07 mm (.003 inch) (IT 10 acc. to ISO)
- Position: 0 to plus (H acc. to ISO)
Hole tolerances according to ISO

The hole tolerance is often connected to the tolerance of an axle, that should fit the hole.

Hole and axle tolerance according to ISO

Axle tolerance position is denominated by lower case letters corresponding to the hole tolerance in upper case letters. The figure below gives a complete picture.

Most common

Play (bearings) Grip = negative play (fix joints)
Hole and tool tolerance

Obtainable hole tolerance with different tools

Drill diameter DC tolerance

Drill tolerance

- The drill is ground to a certain diameter tolerance, designated by lower case letters according to ISO.

The hole tolerance

- For modern solid carbide or exchangeable tip drills, the hole tolerance is very close to the drill tolerance.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tolerance</th>
<th>Solid carbide drills</th>
<th>Exchangeable tip drills</th>
<th>Indexable insert drill</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IT6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IT7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IT8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IT9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IT10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IT11</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IT12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IT13</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Indexable insert drills

Drill tolerance

• The diameter tolerance of an indexable insert drill is a combination of the tip seat tolerance in the drill body and the insert tolerance.

Hole tolerance

• Indexable insert drills give an optimal cutting force balance and a plus tolerance (oversized) hole, because most holes are with H-tolerance.

Drill depth 2-3 x DC

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drill diameter, mm (inch)</th>
<th>Hole tolerance, mm (inch)</th>
<th>Tolerance DC, mm (inch)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12 – 43.99 (12 – 43.99)</td>
<td>0/+0.25 (0/+0.25)</td>
<td>0/+0.28 (0/+0.28)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1.732 – 1.732)</td>
<td>(0/+0.098)</td>
<td>(0/+0.11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44 – 52.99 (44 – 52.99)</td>
<td>0/+0.28 (0/+0.28)</td>
<td>0/+0.3 (0/+0.3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1.732 – 2.086)</td>
<td>(0/+0.098)</td>
<td>(0/+0.118)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53 – 63.5 (53 – 63.5)</td>
<td>0/+0.28 (0/+0.28)</td>
<td>0/+0.3 (0/+0.3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2.087 – 2.5)</td>
<td>(0/+0.098)</td>
<td>(0/+0.118)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Drill depth 4-5 x DC

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drill diameter, mm (inch)</th>
<th>Hole tolerance, mm (inch)</th>
<th>Tolerance DC, mm (inch)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12 – 43.99 (12 – 43.99)</td>
<td>0/+0.4 (0/+0.4)</td>
<td>+0.04/+0.24 (0.+0.0169)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1.732 – 1.732)</td>
<td>(0/+0.157)</td>
<td>(0/+0.0169)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44 – 52.99 (44 – 52.99)</td>
<td>0/+0.43 (0/+0.43)</td>
<td>+0.04/+0.29 (+0.0016/0.0114)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1.732 – 2.086)</td>
<td>(0/+0.169)</td>
<td>(0/+0.0114)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53 – 63.5 (53 – 63.5)</td>
<td>0/+0.45 (0/+0.45)</td>
<td>+0.04/+0.32 (+0.0016/0.0126)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2.087 – 2.5)</td>
<td>(0/+0.177)</td>
<td>(0/+0.0126)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

How to improve the hole tolerance

One way of eliminating the manufacturing tolerance of the drill body and inserts is to preset the drill.

This can be done in a lathe or with an adjustable holder/sleeve, see page E28.

A tolerance width (IT) inside 0.10 mm (.004 inch) can then be obtained.

Hole size can be influenced by changing insert geometry on one of the inserts.
# Troubleshooting

## Indexable insert drill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Problem</th>
<th>Solution</th>
<th>Non-rotating drill</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Oversized holes** | Rotating drill  
1. Increase coolant flow, clean filter, clear coolant holes in drill.  
2. Try a tougher geometry on peripheral side (keep center insert). | 1. Check alignment on lathe.  
2. Rotate drill 180°.  
3. Try a tougher geometry on peripheral side (keep center insert). |
| ![Image](image1.png) | ![Image](image2.png) | ![Image](image3.png) |
| **Undersized holes** | Rotating drill  
1. Increase coolant flow, clean filter, clear coolant holes in drill.  
2. Try a tougher geometry on center side and a light cutting geometry on peripheral side. | Non-rotating drill  
1. Stationary:  
   Check alignment on lathe.  
2. Stationary:  
   Rotate drill 180°.  
3. Try a tougher geometry on center side (keep peripheral). |
| ![Image](image4.png) | ![Image](image5.png) | ![Image](image6.png) |
| **Pin in hole** | Rotating drill  
1. Increase coolant flow, clean filter, clear coolant holes in drill.  
2. Try a different geometry on peripheral side and adjust feed rate within recommended cutting data.  
3. Shorten drill overhang.  
4. Use a lower feed rate during the first 3 mm of the hole depth. | Non-rotating drill  
1. Check alignment on lathe.  
2. Increase coolant flow, clean filter, clear coolant holes in drill.  
3. Shorten drill overhang.  
4. Try a different geometry on peripheral side and adjust feed rate within recommended cutting data. |
| ![Image](image7.png) | ![Image](image8.png) | ![Image](image9.png) |
| **Vibrations** | 1. Shorten drill overhang. Improve the workpiece stability.  
2. Reduce cutting speed.  
3. Try a different geometry on peripheral side and adjust feed rate within recommended cutting data. | |
| ![Image](image10.png) | ![Image](image11.png) | ![Image](image12.png) |
| **Insufficient machine torque** | 1. Reduce feed.  
2. Choose a light cutting geometry to lower the cutting force. | |
| ![Image](image13.png) | ![Image](image14.png) | ![Image](image15.png) |

**Problem Solution**

- **M**: Nm (lbf-ft)
## Troubleshooting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Problem</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Insufficient machine power**       | 1. Reduce cutting speed.  
                                             2. Reduce cutting feed.  
                                             3. Choose a light cutting geometry to lower the cutting force. |
| **Hole not symmetrical**             | Hole widens at bottom (due to chip jam on center insert)  
                                             1. Increase coolant flow, clean filter, clear coolant holes in drill.  
                                             2. Try a different geometry on peripheral side and adjust feed rate within recommended cutting data.  
                                             3. Shorten drill overhang. |
| **Poor tool life**                   | 1. Adjust to higher or lower cutting speed depending on type of wear.  
                                             2. Choose a light-cutting geometry to lower the cutting force.  
                                             3. Increase feed |
| **Broken insert screws**             | 1. Use torque wrench to fasten the screw together, apply Anti-seize.  
                                             2. Check and change insert screw on a regular basis. |
| **Bad surface finish**               | 1. Important to have good chip control.  
                                             2. Reduce feed (if it is important to keep $v_f$, increase speed as well).  
                                             3. Increase coolant flow, clean filter, clear coolant holes in drill.  
                                             4. Shorten drill overhang, improve the workpiece stability. |
| **Chip jamming in the drill flutes** | Caused by long chips  
                                             1. Check geometry and cutting data recommendations.  
                                             2. Increase coolant flow, clean filter, clear coolant holes in drill.  
                                             3. Reduce feed within recommended cutting data.  
                                             4. Increase cutting speed within recommended cutting data. |
**Troubleshooting**

**Tool wear – Indexable insert drill**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Problem</th>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Flank wear</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a) Cutting speed too high.</td>
<td>a) Reduce cutting speed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>b) Insufficiently wear resistant grade.</td>
<td>b) Choose a more wear resistant grade.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Crater wear</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a) Cutting temperature (cutting speed) too high, combined with high pressure (feed, hardness of workpiece).</td>
<td>a–b) Select a more wear resistant grade with better resistance to plastic deformation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>b) As a final result of excessive flank wear and/or crater wear.</td>
<td>a–b) Reduce cutting deformation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>a) Reduce feed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Peripheral insert</strong></td>
<td>• Diffusion wear caused by temperature too high on rake face.</td>
<td>• Select a more wear resistant grade.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Abrasive wear caused by built-up edge and smearing.</td>
<td>• Reduce speed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Central insert</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Abrasive wear caused by built-up edge and smearing.</td>
<td>• Reduce feed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>General</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Choose a more positive geometry i.e. -LM.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plastic deformation (peripheral insert)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a) In sufficient toughness of grade.</td>
<td>a) Select a tougher grade.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>b) Insert geometry too weak.</td>
<td>b) Select a stronger geometry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>c) Built-up edge (BUE).</td>
<td>c) Increase cutting speed or select a more positive geometry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>d) Irregular surface.</td>
<td>d) Reduce feed at entrance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>e) Bad stability.</td>
<td>e) Improve stability.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>f) Sand inclusions (cast iron).</td>
<td>f) Choose a stronger geometry. Reduce feed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chipping</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a) In sufficient toughness of grade.</td>
<td>a) Select a tougher grade.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>b) Insert geometry too weak.</td>
<td>b) Select a stronger geometry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>c) Built-up edge (BUE).</td>
<td>c) Increase cutting speed or select a more positive geometry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>d) Irregular surface.</td>
<td>d) Reduce feed at entrance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>e) Bad stability.</td>
<td>e) Improve stability.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>f) Sand inclusions (cast iron).</td>
<td>f) Choose a stronger geometry. Reduce feed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Troubleshooting**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Problem</th>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Built-up edge (BUE) | a) Low cutting speed (temperature too low at the cutting edge).  
b) Cutting geometry too negative.  
c) Very sticky material, such as certain stainless steels and pure aluminum.  
d) Percent of oil mixture in cutting fluid too low. | a) Increase cutting speed or change to a coated grade.  
b) Select a more positive geometry i.e. -LM.  
c-d) Increase oil mixture and volume/pressure in cutting fluid. |

### Chip evacuation - general recommendations

#### Checkpoints and remedies

1. Make sure the right cutting data and drill geometry are used.

2. Inspect chip form (compare with picture on page E 26).

3. Check if the cutting fluid flow and pressure can be increased.

4. Inspect the cutting edges. Chipping on the edge can cause long chips because the chip is divided. Also a large Built-up-edge can cause poor chip forming.

5. Check if the machinability has changed due to a new batch of workpiece material. Cutting data may need to be adjusted.

6. Adjust feed and speed. See diagram on page E 18.
Peck drilling – solid carbide / exchangeable tip drills

Peck drilling can be used if no other solution can be found. There are two different ways to perform a peck drilling cycle:

- **Method 1 for best productivity**
  Do not retract the drill more than approx. 0.3 mm (.012 inch) from the hole bottom. Alternatively, make a periodical stop, while the drill is still rotating, before continuing to drill.

- **Method 2 for best chip evacuation**
  After each drilling cycle, retract the drill out from the hole to ensure that no chips are stuck onto the drill.
## Troubleshooting

### Tool wear – solid carbide / exchangeable tip drills

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Built-up edge</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Cutting speed too low and edge temperature too high</td>
<td>1. Increase cutting speed or use external cutting fluid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Negative land too large</td>
<td>2. Sharper cutting edge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. No coating</td>
<td>3. Coating on the edge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Percentage of oil in the cutting fluid too low</td>
<td>4. Increase the percentage of oil in the cutting fluid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chipping on the edge corner</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Unstable fixturing</td>
<td>1. Check fixture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. TIR too large</td>
<td>2. Check radial runout</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Intermittent cutting</td>
<td>3. Decrease the feed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Insufficient cutting fluid (thermal cracking)</td>
<td>4. Check cutting fluid supply</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Unstable tool holding</td>
<td>5. Check the tool holder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Flank wear on the cutting edges</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Cutting speed too high</td>
<td>1. Decrease the cutting speed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Feed too low</td>
<td>2. Increase the feed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Grade too soft</td>
<td>3. Change to harder grade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Lack of cutting fluid</td>
<td>4. Check for proper cutting fluid supply</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chipping on the cutting edge</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Unstable conditions</td>
<td>1. Check the setup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Maximum allowed wear exceeded</td>
<td>2. Replace drill sooner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Grade too hard</td>
<td>3. Change to softer grade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Wear on the circular lands</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. TIR too large</td>
<td>1. Check the radial runout</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Cutting fluid too weak</td>
<td>2. Use neat oil or stronger emulsion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Cutting speed too high</td>
<td>3. Decrease cutting speed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Abrasive material</td>
<td>4. Change to harder grade</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Troubleshooting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Wear on the chisel edge</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Cutting speed too low</td>
<td>1. Increase cutting speed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Feed too high</td>
<td>2. Decrease feed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Chisel edge too small</td>
<td>3. Check dimensions</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Wear due to plastic deformation</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Cutting speed and/or feed too high</td>
<td>1. Decrease the cutting speed and/or feed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Not enough cutting fluid supply</td>
<td>2. Increase cutting fluid pressure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Unsuitable drill/grade</td>
<td>3. Use a harder grade</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Thermal cracks (notches)</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Inconsistent cutting fluid</td>
<td>1. Check cutting fluid supply</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Fill cutting fluid tank</td>
<td>2. Fill cutting fluid tank</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Boring

Boring operations involving rotating tools are applied to machine holes that have been made through methods such as pre-machining, casting, forging, extrusion, flame-cutting, etc.

• Theory  F 4
• Selection procedure  F 8
• System overview  F 13
• Choice of tool  F 16
• How to apply  F 22
• Troubleshooting  F 27
Boring theory

The boring process

- Typically, boring operations are performed in machining centers and horizontal boring machines.
- The rotating tool is fed axially through the hole.
- Most holes are through-holes, often in prismatic components such as housings and casings.

Three different basic boring methods

Boring with a stationary tool

- To be used only for symmetrical components in a turning lathe.
- Profiling can be carried out with standard boring bars.
- Very flexible tool solutions with interchangeable cutting heads.

Boring with a rotating tool

- For unsymmetrical components machined in a machining center.
- Flexible tool solutions with adjustable diameters.
- Highly productive in roughing operations.
- High quality hole tolerance and surface finish.

Milling, helical interpolation

- Very flexible solution where one milling cutter can be used for different diameters.
- Saves space in the tool magazine.
- Good solution when chip breaking is a problem.
- High quality demands of the machine (for finishing).
Definitions of terms

Definitions of cutting data terms

Cutting speed

The boring tool rotates at a certain number of revolutions \( n \) per minute generating a certain diameter (DC). This gives a specific cutting speed \( v_c \) measured in m/min (ft/min) at the cutting edge.

Feed

The axial tool movement is called feed rate \( f_n \) and is measured in mm/rev (inch/revolution). The feed rate is obtained by multiplying the feed per tooth, mm/rev (inch/rev), by the number of effective teeth \( z_c \). The feed rate is the key value in determining the quality of the surface being machined and for ensuring that the chip formation is within the scope of the insert geometry.

Penetration rate

The penetration rate \( v_f \) is the speed of the axial movement and is strongly related to productivity.

Cutting depth

The cutting depth \( a_p \) is the difference between the uncut and the cut hole radius.

Definitions of cutting data terms

\[
\begin{align*}
    n &= \text{spindle speed (rpm)} \\
    a_p &= \text{radial depth of cut mm (inch)} \\
    v_c &= \text{cutting speed m/min (ft/min)} \\
    f_n &= \text{feed per revolution mm/r (inch/r)} \\
    \text{DC} &= \text{boring diameter mm (inch)} \\
    v_f &= \text{penetration rate mm/min (inch/min)} \\
    f_z &= \text{feed per tooth mm/rev (inch/rev)} \\
    z_c &= \text{effective number of teeth that machine the final surface}
\end{align*}
\]

Metric

\[
v_c = \frac{\pi \times \text{DC} \times n}{1000} \quad \text{(m/min)}
\]

Inch

\[
v_c = \frac{\pi \times \text{DC} \times n}{12} \quad \text{(ft/min)}
\]

\[
v_f = f_n \times n \quad \text{mm/min (inch/min)}
\]

\[
f_n = z_c \times f_z \quad \text{mm/r (inch/r)}
\]
Calculating torque and power consumption

**Torque**

The torque ($M_c$) is the torque value produced by the boring tool during cutting action, which the machine must be able to provide.

**Net power**

The net power ($P_c$) is the power the machine must be able to provide to the cutting edges in order to drive the cutting action. The mechanical and electrical efficiency of the machine must be taken into consideration when selecting cutting data.

**Specific cutting force**

Cutting force/area for a given chip thickness in tangential direction. The $k_c$ value indicates the machinability of a certain material and is expressed in N/mm$^2$ (lbs/inch$^2$).

---

**Metric**

\[ M_c = \frac{P_c \times 30 \times 10^3}{\pi \times n} \]  
(Nm)

**Inch**

\[ M_c = \frac{P_c \times 16501}{\pi \times n} \]  
(lbf ft)

**Net power, kW**

\[ P_c = \frac{v_c \times a_p \times f_n \times k_c}{60 \times 10^3} \left( 1 - \frac{a_p}{DC} \right) \]

**Net power, HP**

\[ P_c = \frac{v_c \times a_p \times f_n \times k_c}{132 \times 10^3} \left( 1 - \frac{a_p}{DC} \right) \]
Hole making methods

Productive boring

Productive boring involves 2-3 cutting edges and is used for roughing operations of hole tolerances of IT9 or larger, where metal removal rate is the 1st priority. In multi edge boring all slides are set to the same diameter and height. The feed rate is given by multiplying the feed for each insert by the number of inserts \( f_n = f_z \times z \). This is the basic set up for most boring applications.

Step boring

In Step boring the slides are set to different axial heights and diameters. Step boring is used where large radial depth of cuts are required or when boring in soft material (long chipping material). The width of the chip is divided into two small easy to handle chips by this method. The feed rate and surface finish result is the same as if only using one insert \( f_n = f_z \).

Single-edge boring

Single-edge rough boring is used where chip control is demanding (long chipping material) and/or when machine tool power is limited. Only one slide is used. The slide surfaces are protected by covers when not in use. When finish boring an adjustable single-edge tool is used for closer hole tolerances, \( f_n = f_z \).

Reaming

Reaming is a light finishing operation performed with a multi-edge reamer at high feeds.
Tool selection procedure

Production planning process

1. Component
   - Hole dimension and quality

2. Machine
   - Workpiece material, shape and quantity
   - Machine parameters

3. Choice of tool
   - Type of tool

4. How to apply
   - Cutting data, coolant, etc.

5. Troubleshooting
   - Remedies and solutions
1. Component and the workpiece material

Parameters to be considered

Component
- Identify the type of operation and note characteristics regarding the hole to be machined, limitations, material and machine.
- Clamping, clamping forces and cutting forces. Is the component sensitive to vibrations?
- Select the tool that covers the boring diameter range and depth for the operation, surface finish and tolerance.

Material
- Machinability
- Chip breaking
- Hardness
- Alloy elements.

2. Machine parameters

Condition of the machine

- Spindle interface
- Machine stability
- The spindle speed
- Coolant supply
- Coolant pressure
- Clamping of the workpiece
- Horizontal or vertical spindle
- Power and torque
- Tool magazine.
3. Choice of tools

Bending stiffness and torque transmission are the foremost important factors when choosing a tool holder for boring operations. Choose the tool according to your specific needs:

- Tools for various materials, applications and conditions.
- Accurate adjustment mechanisms and high precision coolant for finishing.
- Optimize productivity with multiple cutting edge tools.

- Small and large diameter tools.
- For vibration free machining at long overhangs – use dampened tools.
- Reduce tool assembly weight for ease of handling and less momentum.

Engineered solutions

- Often a combination of multiple operations in one tool.
- The operations can be completed during one feed motion.
4. How to apply

Important application considerations

Tool holding
- Always use the strongest coupling and aim for the shortest tool overhang.
- For best stability and hole quality use Coromant Capto®, dampened tools and tapered shanks.

Tool considerations
- Consider entering (lead) angle, insert geometry and grade.

Chip evacuation and cutting fluid
- Chip formation and evacuation are important factors in boring and affect hole quality and hole tolerance.

Cutting data
- Correct cutting speed and feed rate is essential for high productivity, tool life and hole quality.
- Keep in mind the torque and power of the machine.
5. Troubleshooting

Important application considerations

**Insert wear and tool life**
- Correct geometry, grade and cutting data is essential in boring operations.

**Chip evacuation**
- Check the chip breaking and cutting fluid supply.

**Hole quality and tolerances**
- Check clamping of boring tool/work-piece, feed rate, machine conditions and chip evacuation.

**Cutting data**
- Correct cutting speed, feed rate and cutting depth is essential for high productivity, tool life and to avoid vibrations.
System overview

Rough boring tools

Rough boring operations are performed to open up an existing hole to prepare for finishing.

Fine boring tools

Fine boring operations are performed to finalize hole within tolerance and surface finish limits.

Other information

Large diameter tool with two inserts
Dampened adapter with two inserts
Tool with one insert and tool with two inserts
Tool with three inserts

Dampened adapter with two inserts
Single-edge tool with dampened adapter
Single-edge tool with modular adapter
Single-edge tools
Multi-edge reamer
Fine boring head for fine boring bars

System overview

Parting and grooving

Threading

Milling

Drilling

Boring

Tool holding

Machinability

Other information

ENG

ENG
System overview

Rough boring

- Rough boring tools with two inserts Ø23-170 mm (0.908-6.893"
- Rough boring tools with three inserts Ø36-306 mm (1.4-12"

Rough dampened boring tools with two inserts Ø25-150 mm (1-6"

Large diameter rough boring tools with two inserts Ø150-1260 mm (6-50"

Large diameter rough boring tools with two inserts (lightweight). Ø148-300 mm (5.82-11.81"

Large diameter rough boring tools with two inserts (dampened). Ø148-300 mm (5.82-11.81"

Fine boring – small diameter

- Fine boring heads with solid carbide bar Ø1-8.2 mm (0.04-0.320"
- Fine boring heads with indexable boring bar Ø6-20 mm (0.24-0.79"

Fine Boring Head with indexable bar or grooving bar Ø8-32 mm (0.31-1.26"

Multi-edge reamer Ø3.97-31.75 mm (.156 - 1.25")
Fine boring – medium diameters

- Fine boring with exchangeable heads Ø19-36 mm (0.75-1.42")
- Fine boring with cylindrical shank Ø19-36 mm (0.75-1.42")
- Fine boring with Coromant Capto (modular) Ø19-167 mm (0.75-6.58")
- Fine boring with Coromant Capto (dampened) Ø23-167 mm (0.91-6.58")
- Fine boring with Coromant Capto (lightweight) Ø69-167 mm (2.716-6.575")

Fine boring – large diameters

- Fine boring Ø150-1275mm (5.9-50")
- Fine boring (dampened) Ø150-315mm (5.9-12.4")
- Fine boring with Coromant Capto or arbor mount (lightweight) Ø150-315mm (5.9-12.4")
Choice of tools

Roughing

Productive boring
- High metal removal rate.
- Multi-edge boring, inserts on the same level.

Single-edge boring
- Improved chip control.
- Less machine-power demanding.

Step boring
- For rough boring with large stock removal.
- Improved chip control.

Finishing

Single-edge boring
- High precision fine boring.
- Tolerance capability IT6.
- Adjustability of 0.002 mm (0.00008").

Reaming
- Very good surface finish at high penetration rates.
- Suitable for mass production.

Engineered solutions

- Often a combination of multiple operations in one tool.
- The operations can be completed during one feed motion.
Rough boring tools

Rough boring tool with three inserts

First choice recommendation for medium and high power machines is a rough boring tool with three cutting edges for optimized productivity. Which can also be configured for single-edge and step-boring.

Rough boring tool with two inserts

A rough boring tool with two cutting edges is first choice for low to medium power machines, unstable operations or large diameters.

Light weight rough boring tool

Reduces tool assembly weight, for decreased momentum, easier tool exchange and tool handling. For boring large diameters with increased stability without increased tool weight.

Dampened rough boring tool for long overhangs

Choose dampened rough boring tools for overhangs longer than 4 times the coupling diameter.
Slides for rough boring tools

Slides with negative inserts

- For stable conditions, choose negative shape inserts for better insert economy.
- Use negative inserts in tough applications that require strong inserts and improved process security.

Slides with positive inserts

- In rough boring, it is an advantage to use positive basic-shape inserts as they give lower cutting forces compared to negative inserts.
- A small nose angle and small nose radius also contribute to keeping the cutting forces down.

Entering (lead) angle and insert shape

The entering (lead) angle of boring tools affects the direction and magnitude of axial and radial forces. A larger entering (smaller lead) angle produces a larger axial force, while a smaller entering (larger lead) angle results in a larger radial cutting force.

Positive inserts

For interrupted cuts, sand inclusions, stack boring etc. Through holes only.

Negative inserts

First choice for general operations, step boring and for shoulder operations.

For high feeds or improved surface finish with Wiper inserts in stable conditions.
Fine boring tools

Single-edge fine boring tool

A single-edge fine boring tool is the first choice for fine boring operations.

Light weight fine boring tool

Reduces tool assembly weight, for decreased momentum, easier tool exchange and tool handling. For boring large diameters with increased stability without increased tool weight.

Fine boring head with fine boring bars

For small diameters a fine boring head with fine boring bars is required.

Silent Tools for long overhangs

Silent Tools (dampened) are the first choice for overhangs longer than 4 times the coupling diameter.

Multi-edge reamer

Multi-edge reamers are suitable for high feeds in mass production.
Cartridges for fine boring tools

General recommendations

Entering (lead) angle

affects the direction and magnitude of the axial and radial cutting forces. The largest entering (smallest lead) angle results in increased axial forces, which is beneficial in boring application. Opposed to a smaller entering (larger lead) angle, which results in larger radial forces, causing vibration in the application.

Insert shape

should be selected dependent on the cutting edge engagement. The larger point angle, ensures insert strength and reliability, but also needs more machine power and has a higher tendency to vibrate due to a large cutting edge engagement. Minimizing the insert point angle can improve tool stability and possible radial movements, giving less variation and cutting force. Positive basic shape inserts with 7° clearance angles are first choice.

Insert nose radius

is a key factor in boring operations. The selection of nose radius is dependent on depth of cut and feed rate which influences the surface finish, chip breaking and insert strength. A large nose radius will deflect the boring tool more than a smaller nose radius and be more prone to vibrations. Using a light cutting insert geometry, thin coating and small nose radius with lighter depths of cut contributes to keeping cutting forces low.
Tool overhang

- Choose the shortest possible adapter length.
- Choose the largest possible diameter/size of adapter.
- For long overhangs (larger than 4 × coupling diameter) use dampened adapters.
- If possible, use a tapered adapter to increase the static stiffness and to reduce the deflection.
- For long overhangs, ensure rigid clamping with flange contact to spindle if possible.
How to apply

Hole tolerance

Tolerances will be influenced by:
• the clamping of the tool holder
• the fixture of the component
• the wear of the inserts etc.

Always ensure a final adjustment is made after measurement of the hole diameter while the tool is still in the machine spindle. This will compensate for any misalignment that can happen between the machine-tool spindle and tool setting, radial deflections and insert wear.

Boring and reaming tools

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rough boring tool with multiple edges</th>
<th>Single-edge fine boring tool</th>
<th>Multi-edge reamer for high feed finishing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IT6</td>
<td>IT7</td>
<td>IT8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IT9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

How to apply

Tolerances will be influenced by:
• the clamping of the tool holder
• the fixture of the component
• the wear of the inserts etc.

Always ensure a final adjustment is made after measurement of the hole diameter while the tool is still in the machine spindle. This will compensate for any misalignment that can happen between the machine-tool spindle and tool setting, radial deflections and insert wear.

Boring and reaming tools

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rough boring tool with multiple edges</th>
<th>Single-edge fine boring tool</th>
<th>Multi-edge reamer for high feed finishing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IT6</td>
<td>IT7</td>
<td>IT8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IT9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Fine boring tools

Adjustable fine boring mechanism

Single-edge fine boring tools have adjustment possibilities to accurately pre-set the cutting edge within microns.

Tool deflection

- Boring tools for finishing, with one cutting edge, will experience some degree of radial deflection during machining due to the cutting forces.
- The depth of cut and length of overhang influence the radial deflection of the boring tool.
- The deflection might cause undersized holes or vibrations.
- A measuring cut is normally needed, followed by a final adjustment of the tool.

Hole tolerance

Ø25 mm (Ø.9843") H7
Ø25.021 mm (Ø.9851")
Parting and grooving
Threading
Milling
Drilling
Tool holding
Turning
Machinability
Other information
Boring
ENG ENG

Boring tools – general
Cutting fluid supply

Chip evacuation, cooling and lubrication between the tool and the workpiece material are primary functions of cutting fluid.

- Apply cutting fluid for optimized chip evacuation, cooling and lubrication.
- Affects hole quality and tool life.
- Internal cutting fluid is recommended in order to direct the fluid to the cutting zone.

Chip control and chip evacuation

Chip formation and chip evacuation are critical issues in boring operations, especially in blind holes.

Ideally, chips should be in the form of defined commas or spirals.

Factors that have an influence on chip breaking are:
- the insert micro and macro geometry
- nose radius
- entering (lead) angle
- cutting depth
- feed
- cutting speed
- material.
Cutting data recommendations

Setting the right cutting speed \((v_c)\) and feed \((f_n)\) is dependent on application. Increased cutting speed and/or feed, increases the risk of poor process security and reliability, leading to poor chip evacuation, chip jamming and insert breakage. Especially in deep hole applications. Low cutting speed can generate increase chances for built-up edge (BUE), leading to bad surface finishes, higher cutting forces and decrease in tool life. General cutting data for insert geometry and grade can be followed, with the following exceptions:

- **Rough boring**
  Max start value \(v_c = 200\) m/min (656 ft/min).

- **Fine boring with fine boring adapters:**
  Max start value \(v_c = 240\) m/min (787 ft/min).

- **Fine boring with fine boring bars:**
  Max start value \(v_c = 90 – 120\) m/min (295 – 394 ft/min).

- **Fine boring:**
  Max APMX = 0.5 mm (.020 inch).

**Cutting speed is mainly limited by:**
- vibration tendencies
- chip evacuation
- long overhangs.

**Feed and cutting depth**

Excessive cutting edge engagement, large depth of cut \((a_p)\) and/or feed \((f_n)\), can cause vibration and larger power consumption. To small of cutting depth and the insert will tend to ride on the pre-machined surface, only scratching and rubbing it, also leading to poor result in tool wear and surface finish.

**Power and torque consumption**

When boring make sure the machine can prove sufficient power and torque.
Tool maintenance and use of torque wrench

- Always use a torque wrench and apply the recommended torque on screws for insert and tool assembly.
- Check inserts and insert seats regularly to be free from dirt & are not damaged. Clean all assembly items before assembly.
- Replace worn or exhausted spare parts.
- Lubricate all assembly items as well as the fine boring adjustment mechanism with oil at least once a year.
- Use a suitable assembly mounting fixture and tool pre-setter.
- When assembling dampened tools, never clamp straight over the adaptor body. Adaptors are easily deformed due to the thin wall thickness.
- Check machine spindle run-out, wear and clamping force.

How to apply reaming tools

- The reamer should not be expected to correct any positional or straightness errors in the pre-machined hole.
- The straightness of the pre-machined hole should be less than 0.05 mm (.0020 inch).
- A small runout is very important for reaming operations.
- Maximum recommended runout is 5 microns.
- Make sure the reamer is concentric with the pre-machined hole.
- Choose the shortest possible tool holder and shank.
- Emulsion as cutting fluid generates better tool life than oil.
- Use recommended cutting data.
## Troubleshooting
Factors that affect vibration tendencies

Vibration tendencies grow towards the right.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parting and grooving</th>
<th>Threading</th>
<th>Milling</th>
<th>Drilling</th>
<th>Boring</th>
<th>Tool holding</th>
<th>Other information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Entering angle</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lead angle</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corner radius</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Micro and macro geometry</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edge design</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Depth of cut (DOC)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Decrease cutting speed.
- Apply step boring.
- Choose a 2-edge rough boring tool.
- Choose a light-cutting geometry and grade.
- Use a smaller nose radius.
- Check workpiece clamping.
- Check machine spindle, wear, clamping, etc.
- Increase depth of cut (finishing).
- Decrease depth of cut (roughing).
- Use dampened tools if long overhang.
- Check that all units in the tool assembly are assembled correctly with the correct torque.
- Reduce feed or increase feed.
- Use the largest tool diameter possible.
- Use the shortest tool overhang possible.
Insert wear

Insert wear patterns and remedies in boring are generally very similar to turning.

**Chip breaking**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Too short, hard.</td>
<td>• Increase cutting speed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Decrease feed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Change geometry to a more open chip breaker.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Too long.</td>
<td>• Increase feed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Decrease cutting speed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Change geometry to a more closed chip breaker.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Tool vibration**

- Too high feed.
- Too high speed.
- Too large cutting depth.

- Too high cutting forces.
- • Decrease feed.
- • Decrease speed.
- • Apply step boring.

- • Decrease depth of cut.
- • Use positive inserts.
- • Use smaller nose radius.

**Feed marks**

- Too high feed.
- • Choose knife edge wiper insert.
- • Use larger nose radius.
- • Decrease feed.
### Insert wear

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wrong cutting data.</td>
<td>• Change cutting edge and investigate reason for wear pattern – cutting data, insert geometry and insert grade.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Chips scratching surface

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bad chip breaking.</td>
<td>• Change cutting data. • Change insert geometry.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Surface finish

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bad surface finish.</td>
<td>• Increase speed. • Use coolant. • Use a cermet grade.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Machine power limitation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Limited machine power.</td>
<td>• Decrease cutting data. • Apply step boring. • Decrease number of inserts in cut. • Reduce depth of cut.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Power and torque consumption

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>When rough boring, make sure the machine can provide sufficient power and torque.</td>
<td><strong>Important parameters are:</strong> • Feed. • Number of inserts. • Diameter. • Depth of cut.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Tool holding

The clamping of a cutting tool can influence the productivity and performance of the cutting tool dramatically. Therefore it is important to choose the right holding tools. This chapter will simplify the decision process and give guidelines how to apply and maintain the holding products.

- History and background
- Why modular tooling
- Turning centers
- Machining centers
- Multi-task machines
- Chucks
Tool holding systems

- The tool holding interface with the machine plays a very important part in the cutting process.
- Stability, time for tool changing, accuracy, flexibility, modularity, handling and storing is of vital importance for successful machining.
- Compared to conventional shank tools, a quick change system can increase the effective cutting time by 25% in turning centers.

Tool holding systems today

- Tooling has evolved through the necessity to produce new types of machine manufacturing standards.
- These tools have generally followed the spindle interface design of MTMs, without any standardization controls.
- There are over 35 types of spindle interface on machines today, with as many tooling options to support, hence exchangeability and assortment availability decreases dramatically.
History of machine tapers

- The first version of this steep taper type was introduced during the 1920's and standardized (DIN) in 1974.
- The taper was the basis of most machine tool spindles, due to the long taper, giving secure contact and stability.
- It is still popular today, in various sizes and different standards, using 7/24 taper. They are however not suitable for both rotating and static applications.

Rotating machine interfaces

- There has been an ever increasing variety of different rotating machine interfaces on the market today.
- Unfortunately, these systems are not designed for both clamping in a spindle and modular use.
- None of these systems are suitable for rotating and static applications.
Coromant Capto®

Three systems in one

• Coromant Capto® was introduced in 1990.
• Coromant Capto® was adopted as an ISO Standard during 2008.
• Coromant Capto® is a true universal tooling system for use in:
  - Turning centers
  - Machining centers
  - Multi-task machines

The history of the Coromant Capto® system

• Machining center / Rotating tools

Solid holders  Varilock  Coromant Capto®/Basic holders

• Turning center / Turning tools

Shank holders  Block Tool System  Coromant Capto®/Clamping units

1980  1990
The history of the Coromant Capto® system

Quick change

- Turning Centers
- Vertical Lathes

Integrated spindle

- Multi-Task Machines
- Vertical Lathes
- Machining Centers with Turning

Increased machine utilization
Increased stability and versatility

Modular systems

- Machining Centers
- Multi-Task Machines
- Vertical Lathes

Increased flexibility
A dramatic development of the machines

Machines and machining methods

• Multi-task machines requiring one holder system for both spindle and turrets.
• Several turrets on multi-task machines and turning centers.
• More multi-function tools for multi-task machines.
• Driven tools in turning centers.

• Powerful interfaces in the machine control system for higher degrees of automation.
• 3-D models of tools and holders to virtually check the machine process.
• Integration of various manufacturing technologies into fewer machine types.
• High pressure coolant.

Trends
When to use quick change tooling

- Machine requires frequent setup changes.
- Measuring cuts are necessary to get correct size.
- Machining is performed with high cutting data and relatively short tool life.
- One operator services more than one machine.

Reduce down time in your machines

Only 36% of the machine time is used for metal cutting

- Service and maintenance
- Insert change and tool change
- Measuring of the tool and workpiece
- Change of workpiece
- Effective cutting time

Quick change tooling offers a productivity increase of 25%
Coromant Capto® system

In which machine types and sizes do we need a modular system?

Machining Center with:

- Coromant Capto® size C6 and bigger
- 7/24 tapers in size 40 and bigger
- HSK63 and bigger.

- Multi-task machine with need of long overhangs
- Vertical Turning Center
- Turning Center together with SL*.

*SL is a universal modular system of adaptors with exchangeable cutting heads.
Minimize tool holder inventory

By combining basic holders, adapters and (when needed) extensions or reductions, many different assemblies for different machines can be built.

Modular tools give access to very large number of tooling solutions, with very few items.

Number of items with modular tools:
4 + 2 + 8 = 14 items

Total 64 items
The Coromant Capto® coupling

The unique Coromant Capto® coupling has some very specific features:

- The good flange contact face in relation to the ground taper polygon gives maximum stability due to two-face contact and interference fit.
- There are four gripper grooves for the automatic tool change.
- There is one slot for angular positioning of the cutting tool.

The only universal coupling that can be used in all applications without compromise.
Coupling features and benefits

The main feature of the coupling is the positive 3-way locking

1. The radial centering is taken care of by the conical part of the polygon.

2. The low taper angle makes it possible to transmit the full force into the flange contact. The strength of the polygon coupling makes it possible to clamp with higher force than other systems. This is very important for the bending stiffness.

3. A polygon shape is self centering and takes care of the orientation without the need for a driving slot, therefore there is no play in the coupling. The polygon shape is also unique due to its capability to transmit high torque due to three contact areas.

Due to the above features - radial and axial contact and self centering ability - the coupling has extremely good repeatability, within 2 microns (.00008 inch).

The gripper grooves are designed to give maximum bending stiffness and a higher clamping force, due to the fact that the Capto polygon has a greater surface area.
Transmission of torque

The polygon shape transmits torque without any loose parts such as pins or keys.

- No pins, keys, etc.
- No play in the coupling
- Symmetrical loads
- Two face contact/high clamping force.

Six different coupling sizes

C3 = D 32 mm (1.260 inch)
C4 = D 40 mm (1.575 inch)
C5 = D 50 mm (1.969 inch)
C6 = D 63 mm (2.480 inch)
C8 = D 80 mm (3.150 inch)
C10 = D 100 mm (3.937 inch)

Different methods of clamping

One coupling offers two methods of clamping.

Segment clamping

Clamping method for quick-change and automatic tool changing.

Center bolt clamping

For modular clamping solutions, e.g., when using extensions and basic holders.
Excellent repetitive accuracy and guaranteed center height

- The repeatable accuracy is ±2 microns [µm] (±.00008 inch) of the center height, length and the radial measurement (A),(B),(C).
- Few or no measuring cuts needed if pre-measuring is used (first component right).

Less vibration with stable coupling

In internal machining the Coromant Capto® coupling is an outstanding solution to clamp the boring bar, with a firm secure grip around the entire polygon.

The boring bar is very often clamped with 2-3 screws. This causes problems with vibration, bad surface finish, inserts worn out quickly and production disturbances, with downtime spent on adjusting cutting data and measuring the component.
What is a turning center?

- The principle of lathes and turning centers is to cut a rotating component with a stationary cutting tool.
- The cutting tool moves parallel and perpendicular to the workpiece axis to provide the desired finished shape.
- When a cutting tool is applied to the workpiece, it can be shaped to produce a component which has rotational symmetry.

The turning center has a choice of configurations

- Horizontal and vertical design
- Sub-spindle for two-sided machining
- Driven tools
- Y-axis for eccentric boring and milling.
Configuration of a turning center

Spindle rotation and definitions of axis

• Several multi-axis machine tool programs can provide turning results from roughing and grooving to threading and finishing.

Quick change tooling for turning centers

A quick-change system offers:
- faster and efficient tool changing
- inserts which can be changed outside the machine
- pre-setting possibilities.

The most economical system for:
- small batch production, quicker setup times
- operations with frequent insert changes.

Less than 180° for clamp and unclamp
## Typical clamping units for turning centers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VDI angled</th>
<th>Square shank</th>
<th>Automatic unit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Camshaft activated</td>
<td>Camshaft activated</td>
<td>Hydraulically operated</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **VDI angled**
  - Camshaft activated

- **Square shank**
  - Camshaft activated

- **Automatic unit**
  - Hydraulically operated

### Different methods how to install quick change

- **Directly integrated into the turret**
  - VDI straight
    - Camshaft activated
  - Round shank
    - Segment clamping
  - Special applications
    - Camshaft activated

Coromant Capto® directly integrated in turrets is the best solution to get maximum performance out of the Coromant Capto® coupling.
Different methods how to install quick change

Converted by using standard clamping units

Coromant Capto® as a machine interface via clamping units is a good alternative when it’s not possible to go for direct integration, (existing machines etc).

Five times faster tool change than with conventional shank tools.

Turning lathes can easily be converted to Coromant Capto® quick change tools using standard clamping units. No modifications to the turret, and no special adaptors required.

Internal tools

External tools
Machine adapted clamping units

Coromant Disc Interface (CDI)

• Flexible and symmetrical interface, 180° mountable.
• Same interface for static and driven tool holders. Static and driven tool holders can be used in all positions.
• Higher cutting performance.
• Longer cutting tool life.
• Better workpiece quality.
• More available tool length for radial drilling operations.
• Increased production.
• Rationalized tooling.
• Reduction in tooling costs.

Static clamping unit, straight

Driven drill/milling unit, straight

Static clamping unit, right angle

Driven drill/milling unit, right angle
Coromant Bolt-on Interface (CBI)

- Flexible and symmetric interface, 180° mountable.
- Same interface for static and driven tool holders.
- Static and driven tool holders can be used in all positions.
- Higher cutting performance.
- Longer cutting tool life.
- Better workpiece quality.
- More available tool length for radial drilling operations.
- Increased production.
- Rationalized tooling.
- Reduction in tooling costs.

Driven tool holder

Clamping unit for external turning

Clamping unit for internal turning

Double clamping unit for external turning for tool change with Y-axis
A quick change system

Insert change by using sister tools

- Less downtime
- Few or no measuring cuts. Improved profitability
- No risk of losing insert screws in the chip conveyer
- Ergonomic
- Easy to clean the tip seat outside the machine.

0.5 min

1.5 min

Changing to a sister tool with a quick change system is faster than changing the insert inside the machine.
Different ways how to install quick change
Tooling alternatives in conventional turrets

A Hydraulically operated clamping units
• Manual push-button tool changing
• Fully automatic tool changing possibilities.

B Shank type clamping units
• Square and round shank tools as well as cutting units for external and internal operations.

C Clamping units for VDI turrets
• Angled and straight clamping units for external and internal operations.

Example of installations.
Coromant Capto® driven tool holders

Driven tool holders provide the key to dramatic improvements in machining economy by allowing milling, turning and drilling operations to be carried out in a single setup.

- Driven tool holders can be supplied for specific machine requirements.
- Spindle dimensions
  - Machine type and model
  - Maximum turret swing diameter
  - Maximum tool length.

Example of installations.
Modular tooling for machining centers

What is a machining center?

- A machining center is a multi-function machine that typically combines boring, drilling and milling tasks.
- Machining centers could be in horizontal design as well as vertical design.
- 5-axis machining centers add two more axes in addition to the three normal axes (X/Y/Z).
Machining centers can be horizontal and vertical designs

- The basic type has 3 axes. The spindle is mounted along the Z-axes.
- 4- and 5-axes machining centers adds more axes (A/B/C) in addition to the three normal axes (X/Y/Z).
- With several 5-axis machining centers, ones with a rotating or indexing attachments, the fifth-axis moves around the X-axis. (A-axis) and ones with a B-axis head, the fifth-axis moves around the Y-axis. (B-axis).
- Often the B-axis controls the tilt of the cutting tool itself and the A- and C-axes allow the workpiece to be rotated.
Modular tooling for machining centers

In a machining center a modular system can provide many advantages such as:

- Flexible tooling – the same tools can be used in several machines and machine interfaces.
- Flexible tooling – build your own assemblies and reduce the need for special significantly.
- Reduced inventory.

Build your own assemblies

Use Coromant Capto® adaptors for all spindle interfaces

Machine interface adaptor

Extension/reduction adaptor

Adaptor
Minimize tool holder inventory in machining centers

Modular tools give access to a very large number of tooling solutions, with very few items!

Number of items with modular tools: 4 + 2 + 30 + 10 = 46 items.

Number of items solid tools: 4 x 3 x (30 + 10) = 480 items.

Right combination for best possible rigidity

Extension adaptors and reduction adaptors

Extended tools for machining centers are frequently required to be able to reach the surface to be machined.

With Coromant Capto® modular system it is possible to build an assembly, so the right length can be achieved.

- It is important that the minimum length is used, particularly when long overhangs are required.
- With modular tools it is always possible to use optimal cutting data for best productivity!
- Modular tools are built together in minutes!
- Get closer tolerances.

Extended tools for machining centers are frequently required to be able to reach the surface to be machined.
All main machine interfaces covered

**Machining centers**

### Parting and grooving
- Threading
- Milling
- Drilling
- Boring
- Tool holding

### Other information

**ENG**

- CAT-V 40
- CAT-V 50
- CAT-V 60
- ISO 40
- ISO 50
- ISO 60
- MAS-BT 30
- MAS-BT 40
- MAS-BT 50
- MAS-BT 60

- CAT-V BIG PLUS® 40
- CAT-V BIG PLUS® 50
- ISO BIG PLUS® 40
- ISO BIG PLUS® 50
- MAS-BT BIG PLUS® 30
- MAS-BT BIG PLUS® 40
- MAS-BT BIG PLUS® 50

- HSK A/C 40
- HSK A/C 50
- HSK A/C 63
- HSK A/C 80
- HSK A/C 100
- HSK A/C 125
- HSK A/C 160
- HSK A/C/T 40
- HSK A/C/T 63
- HSK A/C/T 100
- HSK F 80 (with pins)

- Coromant Capto® C3
- Coromant Capto® C4
- Coromant Capto® C5
- Coromant Capto® C6
- Coromant Capto® C8
- Coromant Capto® C10

**G 29**
What is a multi-task machine?

- Multi-task machines come in a variety of configurations:
  - horizontal or vertical design.
  - two spindles (main and sub) and a B-axis spindle enable milling and turning operations on both front and back face of the workpiece.
  - each spindle acts as a workpiece holder allowing multi-axis machining on either front or back face of the workpiece.

- In a multi-task machine, the workpiece can be completed in a single machine setup, e.g., turning, milling, contouring and milling of angled surfaces, and grinding.

- Multi-task machines are a combination of a turning center and a machining center.
Definitions of the spindle directions

The program language for defining the spindle direction

\[ M03 \] = Clockwise spindle direction

\[ M04 \] = Counterclockwise spindle direction

Configuration of a multi-task machine

Spindle rotation and definitions of axis
How to use modular tooling in a multi-task machine

The milling spindle in a multi-task machine tool should be able to carry both rotating and non-rotating tools. Coromant Capto® is the only tooling system that can fulfill this demand without compromise.

Multi-task machine tools are often used in “done-in-one” applications in which operations run from roughing to finishing in one machine tool setup.

Therefore multi-task machine tools needed a tooling system with unsurpassed rigidity and repetitive accuracy both radially and axially, like Coromant Capto®.

The Coromant Capto® tooling system is directly integrated in the spindle.

Multi-task machine tool with Coromant Capto® integrated tool spindle and lower turning turret with Coromant Capto® clamping units.

Turret with Coromant Capto® tooling system
New multifunctional tools for multi-task machines

For taking advantage of versatile multi-task machine tools and to optimize their efficiency, there is sometimes a demand for running them with dedicated tooling. These tools are only available with Coromant Capto® and have been invented for multi-task machine tools, offering:

- accessibility, stability and higher productivity
- reduced tool changing time
- saved tool pocket in tool magazine
- cost reduction - one tool replaces many tools.

Multifunctional tools
- one milling and four turning tools in one

Twin tools
- two turning tools in one

Mini-turrets
- four turning tools in one

Multi-task machines
Multi-task machines

Build your own mini-turret

Four cutting heads applied to one tool holder

Pick and choose from a large number of exchangeable cutting heads for turning, threading, parting and grooving operations for building an optimized tool for the component.

- Reduce tool changing time
- Save tool pockets in tool magazine
- For both external and internal use.

Use of adaptors in a multi-task machine

Tool adaptors for shank tools

Turning tool adaptors for
- shanks
- bars
- blades
- mini-turrets
...to make it possible to use shank tools also in a multi-task machine with an integrated modular tool system in the spindle.

Tool adaptor with blade for parting off

Tool adaptor for boring bar
Chucks
Benefits of using hydraulic chucks

Hydraulic chuck
- Heavy duty design

Hydraulic chuck
- Slender design

Hydraulic chuck
- Pencil design

Shrink fit

Open sleeves
Sealed sleeves
Direct clamping

ER collet chuck

Open sleeves
Sealed sleeves
## Choice of chucks

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chucks</th>
<th>Hydraulic chuck</th>
<th>Shrink fit chuck</th>
<th>Mechanical chuck</th>
<th>ER collet chuck</th>
<th>Side-lock adaptors Weldon, ISO 9766</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>![Image]</td>
<td>![Image]</td>
<td>![Image]</td>
<td>![Image]</td>
<td>![Image]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Pull out security, torque transmission**
  - Hydraulic: ![Green]
  - Shrink fit: ![Green]
  - Mechanical: ![Yellow]
  - ER collet: ![Yellow]
  - Side-lock: ![Green]

- **Easy handling**
  - Hydraulic: ![Green]
  - Shrink fit: ![Red]
  - Mechanical: ![Yellow]
  - ER collet: ![Yellow]
  - Side-lock: ![Green]

- **High precision, run-out**
  - Hydraulic: ![Green]
  - Shrink fit: ![Green]
  - Mechanical: ![Yellow]
  - ER collet: ![Yellow]
  - Side-lock: ![Red]

- **Flexibility**
  - Hydraulic: ![Green]
  - Shrink fit: ![Red]
  - Mechanical: ![Green]
  - ER collet: ![Green]
  - Side-lock: ![Red]

- **Accessibility**
  - Hydraulic: ![Green]
  - Shrink fit: ![Green]
  - Mechanical: ![Red]
  - ER collet: ![Red]
  - Side-lock: ![Red]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rating</th>
<th>Very good</th>
<th>Good</th>
<th>Acceptable</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Green</td>
<td>![Green]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yellow</td>
<td>![Yellow]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red</td>
<td>![Red]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Hydraulic chucks

- Best pull out security on the market - clamping force repeats time after time.
- Precision run out < 4 µm (.00016") at 2.5 x DC - high precision repetition.
- Easy handling - torque wrench used for secure clamping.

Shrink fit chuck

- High pull out security and high precision.
- Small nose diameter possible – good accessibility.
- Symmetrical design.

Mechanical chucks

- Cylindrical sleeves can be used – good flexibility.
- Accessibility not so good because of its design (often Heavy Duty).

ER collet chuck

- Very flexible in clamping diameters thanks to collets.
- Not depending on shank tolerance h6.
- Low torque transmission and run-out.


**Side-lock adaptors Weldon, ISO 9766**

- High torque transmission.
- Low precision – low tool life and low surface finish.

**Hydraulic chucks**

The secret behind the high precision and pull-out security

- A new generation of hydraulic chucks provides highest precision and torque transmission capability.
- The secret behind the high precision and pull-out security of CoroChuck 930 is the optimized design of the membrane. It allows for secure clamping with two supports on each side (fulcrums).
Try to minimize the gauge length

- It is important to maintain as short a gauge length as possible to increase stability and reduce deflection.
- Length reduction as little as 20% can have a significant reduction in deflection (-50%).

Influence of run-out on tool life

- Runout should be < 0.006 mm (< .001 inch).
- For every 0.01 mm (.0004 inch) runout - up to 50% decrease in tool life.
- More critical as tool diameter gets smaller.
Tool holding requirements

Application - Roughing and semi-finishing

- Main criteria = clamping force
- High torque capability
- For best performance use cylindrical shanks
- Versatility of collets.

Application - Finishing

- Main criteria = runout
- Influence on tool life and component finish and accuracy.

Unbalance in tool holders

Unbalance in tool holders causes:
- poor surface finish
- poor part tolerances
- reduction in tool life
- premature machine-spindle wear.
Parting and grooving
Threading
Milling
Drilling
Boring
Tool holding
Machinability
Other information
Machinability

Matching the most suitable cutting tool material (grade) and insert geometry with the workpiece material to be machined is important for a trouble-free and productive machining process.

- Workpiece materials
- Manufacture of cemented carbide
- The cutting edge
- Cutting tool materials
- Tool wear & maintenance

Other information

- Machining economy
- ISO 13399 - The industry standard
- Formulas and definitions
- E-learning
Workpiece materials

Six main groups

The ISO standard material groups are divided into six different types. Each type has unique properties regarding machinability and setups that make different demands on the tool.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ISO</th>
<th>Steel</th>
<th>Stainless steel</th>
<th>Cast iron</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td><img src="image1" alt="Steel" /></td>
<td><img src="image2" alt="Stainless steel" /></td>
<td><img src="image3" alt="Cast iron" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td><img src="image4" alt="Non-ferrous" /></td>
<td><img src="image5" alt="Heat Resistant Super Alloys" /></td>
<td><img src="image6" alt="Hardened steel" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

P The largest variety of different types of components is probably in the P-area as it covers several different sectors in the industry.

N The aircraft industry and manufacturers of aluminum automotive wheels dominate the N-area.

M In the M-area, a big part of the application is in gas and oil, tubes, flanges, process industry and the pharmaceutical business.

S Difficult to machine S-area materials are found in the aerospace, gas turbine and power generator industries.

K The K-area is dominated by automotive components, the machine builders and the iron works production.

H Hardened steel in the H-area are seen in a variety of industries such as automotive and their subcontractors, as well as in machine builders and the die and mold business.
Characteristics for chip formation and removal

Factors that must be identified in order to determine a material’s machinability:
- Classification, metallurgical/mechanical, of the workpiece material.
- The cutting edge micro and macro geometry to be used.
- The cutting tool material (grade), e.g. coated cemented carbide, ceramic, CBN, PCD, etc. These selections will have the greatest influence on the machinability of the material at hand.

ISO-P materials are generally long chipping and have a continuous, relatively even flow of chip formation. Variations usually depend on carbon content.
- Low carbon content = tough sticky material.
- High carbon content = brittle material. Cutting force and power needed varies very little.

ISO-M forms a lamellar, irregular chip formation where the cutting forces are higher compared to normal steel. There are many different types of stainless steels. Chip breaking varies depending on the alloying properties and the heat treatment, from easy to almost impossible-to-break chips.

ISO-N materials are generally long chipping and have a continuous, relatively even flow of chip formation. Variations usually depend on carbon content.
- Low carbon content = tough sticky material.
- High carbon content = brittle material. Cutting force and power needed varies very little.

ISO-S chip formation for ISO-K materials varies from near-powderlike chips to a long chip. The power needed to machine this material group is generally low. Note that there is a big difference between gray cast iron (often near-powder) and ductile iron, which many times has a chip breaking more similar to steel.

ISO-H low power needed per mm³ (inch³), but due to the high metal removal rate, it is still a good idea to calculate the maximum power required.

The range is wide, but in general high cutting forces are present.

Often a continuous, red-glowing chip. This high temperature helps to lower the \( k_{c1} \) value and is important to help out with the application.
The complex world of metal cutting
Many parameters influence the cutting process

The ISO material groups are divided into 6 different types where each type has unique properties regarding machinability.

- **P** Steel
- **M** Stainless steel
- **K** Cast iron
- **N** Non-ferrous
- **S** Heat resistant alloys
- **H** Hardened steel

Usually there is a relation between material hardness and tool life, as well as machining data and type of geometry and grade. The higher the hardness, the shorter the tool life, with more rapid wear on the cutting edge.

Depending on the type of material, set-up and way of machining, different choice of tooling is required to perform different applications turning, milling, drilling etc.
There are three major types of application, all requiring different tools, inserts and grades. These also depend on the load on the cutting edge, from finishing to roughing.

All components are different in look, shape and size. Some will need various set-ups and require special attention to the clamping conditions of the workpiece and cutting tool.

Carbide performs best when machining at elevated temperatures, but needs to be constant. Dry conditions should therefore be considered first choice, depending on component requirements and machining conditions. However some grades are developed for both wet and dry conditions and used depending on component material and quality requirements.
The interaction between workpiece material, geometry and grade

- The interaction between an optimized geometry and grade for a certain workpiece material is the key for a successful machining process.
- These three basic factors must be considered carefully and adapted for each machining operation.
- The knowledge and understanding of how to work with and adjust these factors is of vital importance.

Workpiece materials, main groups

Materials are classified using MC codes

- **Steel**
  - PM
  - Stainless steel
- **Cast iron**
  - KN
  - Non-ferrous
- **Heat resistant super alloys and titanium**
  - HS
  - Hardened material

Within each material group there are subgroups depending on the hardness of the material, $k_{c1}$ value, and metallurgical and mechanical properties.

* MC = A new material classification that replaces the CMC (Coromant Material Classification) codes.
MC code structure

The structure is set up so that the MC code can represent a variety of workpiece material properties and characteristics using a combination of letters and numbers.

Example 1:
The code P1.2.Z.AN is interpreted this way:
P = ISO code for steel
1 = material group: unalloyed steel
2 = material subgroup: carbon content \(0.25\% \leq 0.55\%\) C
Z = manufacturing process: forged/rolled/cold drawn
AN = heat treatment: annealed, supplied with hardness values

Example 2:
The code N1.3.C.UT is interpreted this way:
N = ISO code for non-ferrous metals
1 = material group: Aluminum alloys
3 = material subgroup: non-ferrous with Si content 1-13%
C = manufacturing process: casting
UT = untreated

By describing not only the material composition, but also the manufacturing process and heat treatment, which influences the mechanical properties, a more exact description is available, which can be used to generate improved cutting data recommendations.
Steel ISO P – main characteristics

Machining characteristics:
- Long-chipping material.
- Relatively easy, smooth chip control.
- Low carbon steel is sticky and needs sharp cutting edges.
- Specific cutting force $k_c$: 1500–3100 N/mm$^2$ (217,500–449,500 lbs/inch$^2$).
- Cutting force, and the power needed to machine ISO P materials, stays within a limited range.

What is steel?
- Steel is the largest group in the metal cutting area.
- Steels can be non-hardened or hardened and tempered with hardness up to 400 HB.
- Steel is an alloy with the element iron (Fe) as the major component. It is produced through a melting process.
- Unalloyed steels have a carbon content lower than 0.8%, and only Fe, with no other alloying elements.
- Alloymed steels have a carbon content which is lower than 1.7% and alloying elements like Ni, Cr, Mo, V, W.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ISO</th>
<th>MC</th>
<th>Material</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P1</td>
<td>Unalloyed steel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P2</td>
<td>Low-alloyed steel (≤5% alloying elements)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P3</td>
<td>High-alloyed steel (&gt;5% alloying elements)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P4</td>
<td>Sintered steels</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See product catalogs for details on MC codes.
Stainless steel ISO M – main characteristics

Machining characteristics:
- Long-chipping material.
- Chip control is fair in ferritic, to difficult in austenitic and duplex.
- Specific cutting force:
  1800–2850 N/mm²
  (261,000–413,250 lbs/inch²).
- Machining creates high cutting forces, built-up edge, heat and deformation hardening.

What is stainless steel?
- Stainless steels are materials alloyed with min 11–12% chromium.
- The carbon content is often low (down to max 0.01%).
- Alloys are mainly Ni (Nickel), Mo (Molybdenum), and Ti (Titanium).
- The formed Cr₂O₃ layer on the steel surface makes it non-corrosive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ISO</th>
<th>MC</th>
<th>Material</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>P5</td>
<td>Ferritic/Martensitic stainless steel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>M1</td>
<td>Austenitic stainless steels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M2</td>
<td>Super-austenitic, Ni≥20%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M3</td>
<td>Duplex (austenitic/ferritic)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See product catalogs for details on MC codes.
Cast iron ISO K – main characteristics

Machining characteristics:
- Short chipping material.
- Good chip control in all conditions.
- Specific cutting force: 790–1350 N/mm² (114,550–195,750 lbs/inch²).
- Machining at higher speeds creates abrasive wear.
- Moderate cutting forces.

What is cast iron?
- There are 3 main forms of cast iron: gray (GCI), nodular (NCI) and compacted graphite (CGI).
- Cast iron is an Fe-C composition with relatively high content of Si (1–3%).
- Carbon content is over 2% which is the max solubility of C in the Austenitic phase.
- Cr (Chromium), Mo (Molybdenum), and V (Vanadium) form carbides which increase strength and hardness, but lower machinability.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ISO</th>
<th>MC</th>
<th>Material</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>K1</td>
<td></td>
<td>Malleable cast iron</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K2</td>
<td></td>
<td>Gray cast iron</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K3</td>
<td></td>
<td>Nodular SG iron</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K4</td>
<td></td>
<td>Compacted graphite iron</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K5</td>
<td></td>
<td>Austempered ductile iron</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See product catalogs for details on MC codes.
Non-ferrous materials ISO N – main characteristics

Machining characteristics:
- Long-chipping material.
- Relatively easy chip control if alloyed.
- Non-ferrous (Al) is sticky and needs sharp cutting edges.
- Specific cutting force: 350–700 N/mm² (50,750–101,500 lbs/inch²).
- Cutting force, and the power needed to machine ISO N materials, stays within a limited range.

What is Non-ferrous material?
- This group contains non-ferrous, soft metals with hardness under 130 HB.
- Non-ferrous (Al) alloys with up to 22% silicon (Si) make up the largest part.
- Copper, bronze, brass.
- Plastic.
- Composites (Kevlar).

### Non-ferrous materials ISO N – main characteristics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ISO</th>
<th>MC</th>
<th>Material</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N1</td>
<td></td>
<td>Non-ferrous-based alloys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2</td>
<td></td>
<td>Magnesium-based alloys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N3</td>
<td></td>
<td>Copper-based alloys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N4</td>
<td></td>
<td>Zinc-based alloys</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See product catalogs for details on MC codes.
### Heat resistant super alloys and titanium ISO S – main characteristics

#### Machining characteristics:
- Long-chipping material.
- Difficult chip control (segmented chips).
- Negative rake angle is required with ceramics, a positive rake angle with carbide.
- Specific cutting force:
  - For HRSA: 2400–3100 N/mm² (348,000–449,500 lbs/inch²).
  - For titanium: 1300–1400 N/mm² (188,500–203,000 lbs/inch²).
- Cutting forces, and power required are quite high.

#### What are Heat Resistant Super Alloys?
- Heat Resistant Super Alloys (HRSA) include a great number of high alloyed iron, nickel, cobalt or titanium based materials.

#### Groups:
- Fe-based, Ni-based, Co-based

#### Condition:
- Annealed, Solution heat treated, Aged rolled, Forged, cast.

#### Properties:
- Increased alloy content (Co more than Ni), results in better resistance against heat, increased tensile strength and higher corrosive resistance.

#### Workpiece materials

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ISO</th>
<th>MC</th>
<th>Material</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>S1</td>
<td></td>
<td>Iron-based alloys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S2</td>
<td></td>
<td>Nickel-based alloys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S3</td>
<td></td>
<td>Cobalt-based alloys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S4</td>
<td></td>
<td>Titanium-based alloys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S5</td>
<td></td>
<td>Tungsten-based alloys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S6</td>
<td></td>
<td>Molybdenum-based alloys</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See product catalogs for details on MC codes.
Hardened steel ISO H – main characteristics

Machining characteristics:
- Long-chipping material.
- Fair chip control.
- Negative rake angle is required.
- Specific cutting force: $2550–4870 \text{ N/mm}^2$ ($369,750–706,150 \text{ lbs/inch}^2$).
- Cutting forces and power required are quite high.

What is hardened steel?
- Hardened steel is the smallest group from a machining point of view.
- This group contains hardened and tempered steels with hardness $>45–65 \text{ HRC}$.
- Typically, however, hard part turned components can be found to be within the range of $55–68 \text{ HRC}$.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ISO</th>
<th>MC</th>
<th>Material</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H1</td>
<td></td>
<td>Steels (45–65 HRC)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H2</td>
<td></td>
<td>Chilled cast iron</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H3</td>
<td></td>
<td>Stellites</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H4</td>
<td></td>
<td>Ferro-TiC</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See product catalogs for details on MC codes.
The specific cutting force $k_{c1}$

$k_{c1}$ – the tabulated value of $k_c$ for 1 mm (.0394") chip thickness

- The cutting force ($F_c$) is the force needed to shear off a specific chip cross-section in certain conditions.
- This value ($F_c$) is used in the calculation of the power consumption needed for an operation.
- The specific cutting force value ($k_{c1}$) is a material constant, expressed in N/mm$^2$ or lbs/inch$^2$.

See formulas section on specific calculations.

$k_{c1}$ values in N/mm$^2$ (lbs/inch$^2$)

- **P** 1500 – 3100 (217,500 – 449,500)
- **M** 1800 – 2850 (261,000 – 413,250)
- **K** 790 – 1350 (114,550 – 195,750)
- **N** 350 – 1350 (50,750 – 195,750)
- **S** 1300 – 3100 (188,500 – 449,500)
- **H** 2550 – 4870 (369,750 – 706,150)
# The ISO nomenclature in the ISO-P area

## Operations and working conditions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Wear resistance</th>
<th>P</th>
<th>01</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Toughness</th>
<th>P01: Internal and external finishing turning; high cutting speed; small chip area; good surface finish; narrow tolerances; no vibrations.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>P10: Turning; copying; threading; milling; high cutting speed; small to medium chip area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>P20: Turning; copying; medium cutting speed; facing with small chip area; medium to difficult conditions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>P30: Turning; milling facing; medium to low cutting speed; medium to large chip area; includes operations with tough conditions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>P40: Turning; facing; milling; cutting; grooving; low cutting speed; large chip area; large possible chip angle; very tough conditions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>P50: When very high toughness in the tool is needed in turning, facing, grooving, cutting, low cutting speed, large chip area, large possible chip angle, extremely tough conditions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The above diagram is related to the ISO P area. These demands also apply to all other ISO types of material, i.e., M, K, N, S, H.
The manufacture of cemented carbide inserts is a carefully designed process, where geometry and grade are balanced to give a product perfectly matched to the application.
The development of cutting tool material

With the development of better carbide substrates, coatings and geometries, productivity and cost savings have improved for the end user.

Large improvements in productivity were possible in the 60s and 70s when the first coatings were developed.

After this, the developments continued - with advanced substrate design, new geometries, edge designs, new advanced coating techniques and post treatment of coated edges.

The effect on end-user productivity
Powder production

There are two main elements of a cemented carbide insert:
- Tungsten Carbide (WC)
- Cobalt (Co)

Other commonly used elements are Titanium, Tantalum and Niobium Carbides. Designing different types of powder and different percentages of the elements is what makes up the different grades.

The powder is milled and sprayed-dried, sifted and poured into containers.

Manufacture of cemented carbide

Powder production
**Tungsten powder**

**The size of the tungsten carbide grains**

The main raw material for the manufacture of cemented carbide is tungsten-ore concentrate. Tungsten powder is produced from tungstic oxide derived chemically from the raw material. By varying the conditions of reduction, tungsten powder of various grain size can be manufactured. The carbide granules after spray-drying are small and vary in size depending on grade.

**Basic properties of cemented carbide**

Apart from the grain size for the Tungsten carbide (WC), the amount of binder phase is an important factor determining the characteristics of the carbide. Increasing Cobalt-content, together with increasing WC-grain size, contributes to increasing toughness but also to a lower hardness which reduces the wear resistance of the substrate.
Pressing powder compacts

The pressing operation consists of several pieces of tooling:
- Top and bottom punches
- Core pin
- Cavity.

The pressing procedure:
- Powder is poured into the cavity
- Top and bottom punches come together (20-50 tons)
- The insert is picked and placed via robot onto a graphite tray
- Random SPC is performed, to check for weight.

The insert is 50% porous at this stage.
Sintering the pressed inserts

Sintering consists of the following:

- Loading trays of inserts into a sintering furnace.
- The temperature is raised to ~1400° C (~2550° F).
- This process melts the cobalt and the cobalt acts as a binder.

- The insert will shrink 18% in all directions during the sintering; this corresponds to about 50% in volume.

Sintering consists of the following:

1. Unsintered insert
2. Sintered insert
3. Coated insert

Manufacture of cemented carbide
## Different types of grinding operations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Top and bottom</th>
<th>Free profiling</th>
<th>Profiling</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image1.png" alt="Top and bottom" /></td>
<td><img src="image2.png" alt="Free profiling" /></td>
<td><img src="image3.png" alt="Profiling" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chamfer – negative land</th>
<th>Periphery</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image4.png" alt="Chamfer – negative land" /></td>
<td><img src="image5.png" alt="Periphery" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## The reinforcement of the cutting edge

The ER-treatment gives the cutting edge the final micro-geometry.

- ER-treatment (Edge Roundness) is done before coating.
- The relation between W/H depends on the application.

Generally the ER corresponds to the thickness of a hair, diameter: ~80 µm (~.0031 inch).
CVD – Chemical Vapor Deposition

Stacks of inserts are placed into a furnace, a series of gases are introduced to the chamber, lines are purged and another series of gases introduced. This is repeated until the layers of coating are complete. The process is carried out at approx. 900° C (1650° F) for 30 hours. Thickness is approx 2-20 microns (.00008-.0008 inch).

The advantages of CVD coatings

- The ability to making thick coatings.
- Ability to make even coating thickness.
- Very good adherence to the carbide substrate.
- Very good wear resistance.
- Possibility to make oxide coatings.
PVD – Physical Vapor Deposition

The inserts are loaded into the coating chamber on trays. Metal source targets are placed on the reactor chamber walls. The most common source is titanium (Ti). The targets are heated to a temperature where the solid metal ionizes. By using a gas as carrier, the ions can then be transported from the targets to the inserts. As the inserts are cooler, the ions will condensate on the insert surface to form a coating.

The coating thickness is in the range of 2-6 microns (.00008-.0002 inch) depending on application area for the insert.

The most common PVD layers today are TiN, Ti(C,N), (Ti,Al)N, (Ti,Al,Cr)N and now also non-ferrous oxides.

The advantages of PVD coating

- PVD provides good edge line toughness.
- PVD coatings can maintain a “sharp” cutting edge.
- PVD can be used on brazed tips.
- PVD can be used on solid carbide tools.
**PVD vs. CVD coating process**

**PVD (Physical Vapor Deposition)**

In a PVD coating process, the coating is formed by metal vapor condensating on insert surfaces. PVD works the same way as when humid air condensates on cold roads and forms an ice layer on the road. PVD is formed at a much lower temperature than CVD. Normal PVD process temperatures are around 500°C (930°F). The coating thickness is in the range of 2-6 microns (.00008-.0002 inch) depending on application area for the insert.

**CVD (Chemical Vapor Deposition)**

In a CVD coating process, the coating is formed by a chemical reaction of different gases. Temperature, time, gas flow, gas atmosphere, etc., are carefully monitored to steer the deposition of the coating layers. Depending on the type of coating, the temperature in the reactor is about 800 to 1100 degrees C (1470 to 2000 degrees F). The thicker the coating the longer the process time. The thinnest CVD coating today is below 4 microns (.00016 inch) and the thickest is above 20 microns (.0008 inch).

- **PVD**
  - ~500°C (~930°F)
  - ~1/100000 atm
  - Ti
  - Thinner coating
  - Sharper edges
  - Tougher

- **CVD**
  - ~1000°C (~1830°F)
  - ~1/20 atm
  - H2
  - N2, HCl, CH4
  - Thicker coating
  - More wear resistant
  - Thermal resistant
Vision control, marking and packaging

Before being packaged, each insert is inspected again and compared with the blueprints and batch order. A laser marks the insert with the correct grade, and it's placed in a grey box with a printed label. It's now ready to be distributed to customers.
The cutting edge

The design of the cutting edge and insert geometry is of vital importance for the chip formation, tool life and feed rate data in metal cutting process.
The high cutting force on a cutting edge

Cemented carbide has a high compressive strength resistance and can also work at high temperatures without plastic deformation. It can also resist high cutting forces \( F_c \) without breaking, as long as the insert is well supported.

In order to understand the tough environment of the cutting edge, you can find two different cutting data conditions for a cutting unit below. They generate about the same cutting force \( F_c \) on the cutting edge.

\[
F_c = k_{c1} \times a_p \times f_n
\]

\[
F_c = 2100 \text{N/mm}^2 \times 13 \text{ mm} \times 0.62 \text{ mm} = 16926 \text{ Newton (N)} = 1700 \text{ kp}
\]

\[
F_c = 304,563 \text{ lbs/in}^2 \times 0.512" \times 0.024" = 3742 \text{ pound force (lbf)} = 1700 \text{ kp}
\]

\[1 \text{lbf} = 0.4535 \text{ kilogram force (kg)},\]

\[1 \text{N} = 0.101 \text{ kg} \]

\[kp = \text{ kilopond or kilogram force}\]
The machining starts at the cutting edge

Typical chip breaking sequences with high speed imaging.

Cutting zone temperatures

The maximum heat generated during cutting is on the top part of the insert, 1000° celsius (1832° fahrenheit), in the chip breaker, and close to the cutting edge. This is where the maximum pressure from the material is, and, with the friction between chip and carbide, causes these high temperatures.

- The rake angle, geometry and feed play an important role in the chip formation process.
- Removing heat from the cutting zone through the chip (80%) is a key factor.
- The rest of the heat is usually evenly distributed between the workpiece and the tool.
The design of a modern insert

A steel turning insert for medium turning.

Definitions of terms and geometry design

Nose cutting edge design

- Macro geometry with chip breaker
- Geometry for small cutting depths
- Cutting edge reinforcement 0.25 mm (.010"
- Rake angle 20°
- Primary land 5°

Main cutting edge design

- 25 mm (.010"
- 20°
- 5°

0.2 mm (.008")

The cutting edge
The reinforcement of the cutting edge

The ER treatment gives the cutting edge the final micro-geometry

• ER treatment (Edge Roundness) is done before coating, and gives the final shape of the cutting edge (micro-geometry).

• The relation between W/H depends on the application.

Generally the ER corresponds to the thickness of a hair, diameter: ~ 80 µm (.0031 inch).

A negative land increases the strength of the cutting edge

In some cases inserts have a negative land and reinforced insert corners, making them stronger and more secure in the intermittent cutting action.

• A negative land increases the strength of the cutting edge, but also creates higher cutting forces.
The cutting edge

Insert rake angle

The rake angle can be either negative or positive.

Based on that, there are negative and positive inserts, where the clearance angles are either zero or several degrees plus. This determines how the insert can be tilted in the tool holder, and results in either a negative or positive cutting action.

- The insert rake angle is the angle between the top face of the insert and the horizontal axis of the workpiece.

Positive and negative cutting action

Turning needs a durable edge that can perform for a long time and often in continuous cuts at high temperature. This condition requires an edge with among other things good chip breaking ability, good resistance against different types of wear and against plastic deformation.

In milling, which always has an intermittent cutting action, the edge needs to have good bulk strength to resist breakage. A large variation in cutting edge temperature due to interrupted cuts also makes resistance to thermal cracks of vital importance.

In drilling, the edge must be strong enough to last at very low cutting speeds, and even at zero speed in the center of the drill.

In most drilling applications there is also coolant present, mainly for chip transportation reasons which puts the edge under extra stress from temperature variations. To be able to transport the chips from the narrow chip flutes and from inside the hole, good chip breaking into short chips is an important factor.
Peak performance in machining

Dedicated inserts for different applications

There are major differences in insert geometry and grade requirements between applications in turning, milling and drilling.

**Turning**

- Needs a durable edge that can perform for a long time, and often in continuous cuts at high temperature.
- Good chip breaking ability.
- Good resistance against different types of wear and against plastic deformation.

**Milling**

- The cutting action is always intermittent and the edge needs to have good bulk strength to resist breaking.
- Variations in cutting edge temperature due to the interrupted cuts also mean that the resistance to thermal cracks is of vital importance.

**Drilling**

- The edge must be strong enough to last at very low cutting speeds; in fact, at zero speed in the center of the drill.
- Coolant is present, mainly for chip transportation reasons, which puts the edge under extra stress from temperature variations.
- To transport the chips from the narrow chip flutes and from inside the hole, good chip breaking is important.
### Six main groups of workpiece materials

#### Different characteristics for removing chips

Good chip forming usually results in high cutting forces and excess heat, depending on the material. This can lead to low cutting speeds with adhesive stresses as a result. On the other hand, materials like non-ferrous, unalloyed steels and low-strength cast iron produce less cutting force.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Material</th>
<th>Image</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Steel</td>
<td><img src="image1" alt="Steel" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stainless steel</td>
<td><img src="image2" alt="Stainless steel" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cast iron</td>
<td><img src="image3" alt="Cast iron" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-ferrous</td>
<td><img src="image4" alt="Non-ferrous" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heat resistant alloys</td>
<td><img src="image5" alt="Heat resistant alloys" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hardened steel</td>
<td><img src="image6" alt="Hardened steel" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
From universal to optimized turning inserts

General inserts
- General geometry
- Optimizing with grades
- Performance compromised

Dedicated inserts
- Dedicated geometries and grades
- Optimized performance according to workpiece machinability

Dedicated inserts for the ISO P, M, K and S areas
The different micro- and macro-geometries are adapted to the various requirements in the applications and materials.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Workpiece material</th>
<th>Finishing</th>
<th>Medium</th>
<th>Roughing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td><img src="image1" alt="Diagram" /></td>
<td><img src="image2" alt="Diagram" /></td>
<td><img src="image3" alt="Diagram" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>17° 0.7 mm (.028&quot;)</td>
<td>22° 0.2 mm (.008&quot;)</td>
<td>22° 0.32 mm (.013&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td><img src="image4" alt="Diagram" /></td>
<td><img src="image5" alt="Diagram" /></td>
<td><img src="image6" alt="Diagram" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15° 0.1 mm (.004&quot;)</td>
<td>22° 0.25 mm (.010&quot;)</td>
<td>22° 0.32 mm (.013&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K</td>
<td><img src="image7" alt="Diagram" /></td>
<td><img src="image8" alt="Diagram" /></td>
<td><img src="image9" alt="Diagram" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6° 0.1 mm (.004&quot;)</td>
<td>2° 0.25 mm (.010&quot;)</td>
<td>0°</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td><img src="image10" alt="Diagram" /></td>
<td><img src="image11" alt="Diagram" /></td>
<td><img src="image12" alt="Diagram" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15°</td>
<td>25°</td>
<td>10°</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Type of application - Turning

**Rough Turning**
- Operations for maximum stock removal and/or severe conditions
- High D.O.C. and feed rate combinations
- Operations requiring highest edge security

**Medium Turning**
- Most applications – general purpose
- Medium operations to light roughing
- Wide range of D.O.C. and feed rate combinations

**Finish Turning**
- Operations at light depths of cut \(a_p\) and low feed rates
- Operations requiring low cutting forces

Selecting the insert geometry in turning

**Finishing (F)**
- Extra positive
- Finish machining
- Low cutting forces
- Low feed rates.

**Medium (M)**
- General purpose geometry
- Medium feed rates
- Medium operations to light roughing.

**Roughing (R)**
- Reinforced cutting edge
- Rough machining
- Highest edge security
- High feed rates.
Type of application - Milling

Depth of cut, \( a_p \), mm (inch) vs. Feed \( f_z \), mm/tooth (inch/tooth)

**Heavy Milling**
- Operations at maximum stock removal and/or severe conditions
- Larger depth of cut and feed rate
- Operations requiring highest edge security

**Medium Milling**
- Most applications – general purpose milling
- Medium operations to light roughing
- Medium depth of cut and feed rate

**Light Milling**
- Operations at small depth of cut and low feed rates
- Operations requiring low cutting forces

Selecting the insert geometry in milling

**Light (-L)**
- Extra positive
- Light machining
- Low cutting forces
- Low feed rates.

**Medium (-M)**
- General purpose geometry
- Medium feed rates
- Medium operations to light roughing.

**Heavy (-H)**
- Reinforced cutting edge
- Heavy machining
- Highest edge security
- High feed rates.
Cutting tool materials

The selection of cutting tool material and grade is an important factor to consider when planning a successful metal cutting operation. A basic knowledge of each cutting tool material and its performance is therefore important to be able to make the correct selection for each application. This should take into consideration the workpiece material to be machined, the component type and shape, machining conditions and the level of surface quality required for each operation.
The ideal cutting tool material should:

- be hard, to resist flank wear and deformation
- be tough, to resist bulk breakage
- not chemically interact with the workpiece material
- be chemically stable to resist oxidation and diffusion
- have good resistance to sudden thermal changes.
The main range of cutting tool materials

• Uncoated cemented carbide (HW)
• Coated cemented carbide (HC)
• Cermet (HT, HC)
• Ceramic (CA, CN, CC)
• Cubic boron nitride (BN)
• Polycrystalline diamond (DP, HC)

Uncoated cemented carbide

Characteristics, features and benefits

• Used in moderate to difficult applications related to steel, HRSA, titanium, cast iron and non-ferrous in turning, milling and drilling.
• Good combination of abrasive wear resistance and toughness.
• Gives sharp cutting edges.
• Good edge security but limited wear resistance at higher speeds.
• Represents a small portion of the total grade program.

1) Polycrystalline diamond and cubic boron nitride are also called superhard cutting materials.
Coated cemented carbide

**Characteristics, features and benefits**

- General use in all kinds of components and materials for turning, milling and drilling applications.
- Extremely good combination of wear resistance and toughness in a variety of jobs.
- Consists of a large variety of grades with hard to tough substrates, usually with gradient sintering, and various coatings of CVD and PVD-type.
- Shows very good wear characteristics with long tool life.
- Dominates the insert program, with increasing share.

Cermet

- Used in finishing and semi-finishing applications where close tolerance and good surface finish is required.
- Chemically stable with a hard and wear resistant substrate.
- Consists of Titanium based (TiC, TiCN) cemented carbide with cobalt as a binder.
- Quite low share of total insert program.

Ceramic

- Depending on type of ceramic, the grades are mainly used in cast iron and steel, hardened materials and HRSA.
- Ceramic grades are generally wear resistant and with good hot-hardness. Wide application area in different types of material and component.
- Ceramics are considered brittle and need stable conditions. With additions in the mix and whisker reinforced ceramic, toughness is improved.
- Fairly low share of total insert usage, but increased usage in the aerospace and hardened steel-cast iron areas.
Cubic boron nitride

Characteristics, features and benefits

- For finish turning of hardened steel. Roughing of gray cast iron at high cutting speeds. Rough turning of rolls in white/chilled cast iron.
- Applications that require extreme wear resistance and toughness.
- CBN consists of Boron nitride with Ceramic or Titanium nitride binder.
- Resists high cutting temperatures at high cutting speeds.
- Special application area with small volume inserts. Trend is towards a higher volume of hard materials to be cut.

Polycrystalline diamond

- Turning of normal non-ferrous at low temperature and very abrasive hypereutectic non-ferrous. Used in non-metal and non-ferrous materials.
- Extremely wear resistant grades. Sensitive to chipping.
- Brazed-in corners of polycrystalline diamond (PCD tip) to an insert or thin diamond coated film on a substrate.
- Long tool life and extremely good wear resistance. Decomposes at high temperatures. Dissolves easily in iron.
- Fairly low portion of the insert program, with special limited applications.
The development of cutting tool material

The development of cutting tool material through the years can be seen in the reduced time taken to machine a component 500 mm long, with 100 mm diameter (19.685 inch long, with 3.937 inch diameter) from 1900 to today.

At the beginning of the last century, cutting tool material was only slightly harder than the material which needed to be cut. Therefore tool life was poor, and cutting speed and feed had to be kept very low.

The introduction of HSS brought major improvements, which resulted in reduced cutting time. 20 years later uncoated cemented carbide brought down the required time in cut to a staggering 6 minutes.

The introduction of coated carbide again lowered the cutting time to 1.5 minutes.

Today with improved geometries and new coating technique we have reached below 1 minute in cutting time for the 500 mm (19.685 inch) steel bar.

In addition to traditional uncoated and coated carbide, new cutting tool materials like cermet, ceramic, cubic boron nitride and diamond, have contributed to optimized and improved productivity.
What is cemented carbide and a grade?

- Cemented carbide is a powder metallurgical material consisting of:
  - hard-particles of tungsten carbide (WC)
  - a binder metal, cobalt (Co)
  - hard-particles of Ti, Ta, Nb (titanium, tantalum, niobium-carbides).

- A grade represents the hardness or toughness of the insert, and is determined by the mixture of ingredients which make up the substrate.

Coating of cemented carbide

- Coating of cemented carbide was developed in the 1960s.
- A thin Titanium Nitride coating layer was added, only a few microns thick. This improved the performance of carbide overnight.
- Coatings offer improved wear resistance giving longer tool life and possibility to use higher cutting data.
- Today modern grades are coated with different carbide, nitride and oxide layers.
Microstructure of cemented carbide

Cemented carbide consists of hard particles (carbides) in a binder matrix. The binder is more or less in all cases cobalt (Co) but could also be Nickel (Ni). The hard particles consist mainly of tungsten carbide (WC) with a possible addition of gamma phase (Ti-, Ta- Nb-carbides and nitrides).

The gamma phase has a better hot hardness and is less reactive at elevated temperatures, so is often seen in grades where the cutting temperature can get high. WC has a better abrasive wear resistance.

Elements:
- Alpha-phase
  WC (tungsten carbide)
- Gamma-phase
  (Ti,Ta,Nb)C
  (titanium, tantalum, niobium-carbides)
- Beta-phase
  Co (cobalt)

Hair diameter
= 50-70 μm (.0020-.0028")
Fundamental characteristics

Apart from the grain size of the tungsten carbide (WC), the amount of binder phase cobalt (Co) is an important factor determining the characteristics of the carbide. The Co content in Sandvik Coromant grades is generally 4–15% of the total weight.

An increase in Co content and WC grain size contributes to an increase in bulk toughness, but also lowers the hardness. As a result, the substrate has less resistance to plastic deformation, which means less wear resistance/lower practical tool life.
Coating design

Many factors influence the behavior of the insert:
- Coating process
- Coating material
- Coating thickness
- Post treatment
- Surface morphology.

Example of modern steel turning grades

Structure and build-up of the coating layers

Wear resistance  
Thicker coatings mean more wear resistance.

Harder substrates mean more deformation resistance.
Grade design

Coatings and substrates vary with the type of application

Thicker coatings mean more wear resistance.
Harder substrates mean more deformation resistance.

The coating of a modern turning grade

The grade plays a very important part of the performance

- **Al₂O₃**
  - Coating for chemical and thermal wear resistance

- **TiCN**
  - MTCVD coating for mechanical wear resistance

- **Functional gradient**
  - For optimized hardness and toughness

- **Cemented carbide**
  - Plastic deformation resistance
Properties of different coating materials

CVD coating of inserts
Chemical Vapor Deposition

- The most common CVD layers today are TiN, Ti(C,N) and Al₂O₃.
- TiCN provides flank wear resistance.
- Al₂O₃ provides temperature protection (plastic deformation resistance).
- TiN provides easy wear detection.

TiN = Titanium nitride
Ti(C,N) = Titanium carbonitride
Al₂O₃ = Non-ferrous oxide

PVD coating of inserts
Physical Vapor Deposition

- PVD coatings are generally tougher than CVD coatings.
- PVD coatings are often used in combination with fine-grained substrates to coat “sharp” cutting edges.
- Total thickness of the PVD layers is often between 3 – 6 μm (.0001 – .0002 inch).
- The coating is applied at approx. 500° C (932° F).

TiAlN = Titanium aluminum nitride
Tool wear & maintenance

- Tool wear  H 53
- Maintenance  H 61
The tough environment in metal cutting

Different wear mechanisms on the inserts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of load</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Wear picture</th>
<th>Cause</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mechanical</td>
<td><img src="hammer.png" alt="Hammer and Sledgehammer" /></td>
<td><img src="wear-mechanism.png" alt="Wear Mechanism" /></td>
<td>Mechanical stress on the insert edge causes breakage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thermal</td>
<td><img src="temperature-gauge.png" alt="Temperature Gauge" /></td>
<td><img src="wear-mechanism.png" alt="Wear Mechanism" /></td>
<td>Temperature variations cause cracks and heat generates plastic deformation (PD) on the insert edge.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chemical</td>
<td><img src="chemical-flask.png" alt="Chemical Flask" /></td>
<td><img src="wear-mechanism.png" alt="Wear Mechanism" /></td>
<td>A chemical reaction between carbide and working material causes wear.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abrasive</td>
<td><img src="abrasives.png" alt="Abrasives" /></td>
<td><img src="wear-mechanism.png" alt="Wear Mechanism" /></td>
<td>In cast iron the SiC inclusions can wear on the insert edge.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adhesive</td>
<td><img src="adhesive.png" alt="Adhesive" /></td>
<td><img src="wear-mechanism.png" alt="Wear Mechanism" /></td>
<td>With sticky material, built-up layers/edges are formed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

BUE = Built-Up Edge
PD = Plastic Deformation
Wear pictures, cause and remedy

Some of the most common wear patterns

Flank wear (abrasive)
Flank wear is one of the most common wear types and it occurs on the flank face of the insert (tool). This is the preferred wear pattern.

**Cause**
During cutting, tool material is lost on the flank face due to friction against the surface of the work piece material. Wear typically begins at the edge line and gradually develops downward.

**Remedy**
Reducing the cutting speed and simultaneously increasing the feed will result in increased tool life with retained productivity.

Crater wear (chemical)

**Cause**
Crater wear occurs as a result of chip contact with the rake face of the insert (tool).

**Remedy**
Lowering the cutting speed and choosing an insert (tool) with the right geometry and a more wear resistant coating will increase the tool life.

Plastic deformation (thermal)
Plastic deformation is a permanent change in the shape of the cutting edge, where the edge has either suffered an inward deformation (edge impression) or a downward deformation (edge depression).

**Cause**
The cutting edge is subjected to high cutting forces and temperatures resulting in a stress state, exceeding the tool materials yield strength and temperature.

**Remedy**
Plastic deformation can be dealt with by using grades with higher hot hardness. Coatings improve the plastic deformation resistance of the insert (tool).
Flaking
Flaking usually occurs when machining in materials with smearing properties.

Cause
An adhesive load can develop, where the cutting edge is subjected to tensile stresses. This may lead to the detachment of the coating, exposing sublayers or substrate.

Remedy
Increasing the cutting speed as well as selecting an insert with a thinner coating will reduce the flaking on the tool.

Cracks (thermal)
Cracks are narrow openings in which new boundary surfaces have been formed through rupture. Some cracks are confined to the coating, while others extend down into the substrate. Comb cracks are roughly perpendicular to the edge line and most often thermal cracks.

Cause
Comb cracks form as a result of rapid fluctuations in temperature.

Remedy
To prevent this, a tougher insert grade can be used and the coolant should be applied in large amounts or not at all.

Chipping (mechanical)
Chipping consists of minor damage to the edge line. The difference between chipping and fracture is that with chipping the insert can still be used.

Cause
There are many combinations of wear mechanisms that can cause chipping. However, the most common are thermo-mechanical and adhesive.

Remedy
Different preventative measures can be taken to minimize chipping, depending on which wear mechanism/mechanisms that caused it.
Notch wear

Notch wear is characterised by excessive localised damage at maximum cutting depth but can also occur on secondary edge.

Cause
Depending upon if the chemical wear dominates the notch wear, which proceeds more regularly, as in the picture, compared to irregular growth of adhesive or thermal wear. In the latter case work hardening and burr formation are important factors for notch wear.

Remedy
For work-hardening materials, select a smaller entering angle and/or vary the depth of cut.

Fracture

Fracture is defined as the breakout of a large part of the cutting edge, where the insert can no longer be applied.

Cause
The cutting edge has been exposed to a greater load than it can resist. This could be the result of allowing the wear to progress too far leading to increased cutting forces. It can also be caused prematurely due to the wrong cutting data or stability issues in the setup.

Remedy
Identify and prevent the original wear type, selecting proper cutting data and checking stability of setup.

Built up edge (adhesive)

Built up edge (BUE) is an accumulation of material against the rake face.

Cause
Built up material can form on the top of the cutting edge, which separates the cutting edge from the material. Resulting in increased cutting forces, leading to failure or releasing and taking away parts of the coating and even substrate layers.

Remedy
Increasing the cutting speed can prevent the formation of BUE. In softer, stickier materials a sharper edge will help.
Consequences of poor tool maintenance

- Damaged inserts
- Damaged shims
- Damaged tool holders
- Damaged components
- Damaged machine

Result:
- Reduced production
- Higher production costs
Inspection of tool

Visually inspect shims & shim seats

- Check shim damage.
- Clean insert seat and damaged location and support for cutting edge.
- If necessary index or replace shim.
- Ensure correct insert location against support points.
- It is important to ensure that shim corners have not been knocked off during machining or handling.

Inspect pockets

- Pockets damaged or plastic deformation.
- Oversized pockets due to wear. The insert does not sit properly in the pocket sides. Use a 0.02 mm (.0008 inch) shim to check the gap.
- Small gaps in the corners, between the shim and the bottom of the pocket.

The importance of using the correct wrench

Why use the proper wrenches?

- Extends life of screw and wrench.
- Reduces risk of stripping screw.

What is the proper way to tighten an insert screw?

- Important to use the proper wrench.
- Always use correct torque. Values are marked on tool and shown in product catalog.
- Common sense!
Torx Plus® wrenches

Torx Plus from Sandvik Coromant

Nm (lbs-in)

Torx Plus® vs. Torx
Cross section

Torx Plus®  Torx

Torx Plus is a registered trademark of Camcar-Textron (USA)

Torx Plus® wrenches with adjustable torque

- On parting and grooving tools an adjustable torque wrench is required, as the torque is not related to screw size.
- It should of course be used on all products with a clamp screw.
**Insert screws / clamping screws**

- Screw threads, heads and Torx sockets should be in good condition.
- Use correct keys.
- Ensure correct screw-tightening torque.
- Apply sufficient screw lubrication to prevent seizure. Lubricant should be applied to the screw thread as well as the screw-head face.
- Replace worn or exhausted screws.

---

**Important!**

Use Anti-seize for screw heads and threads
Tool maintenance

Contact faces

- Always check supporting and contact faces of tool holders, milling cutters and drills, making sure there is no damage or dirt.

- In boring operations it is especially important to have the best possible clamping. If the bar is not supported to the end of the holder, overhang will be increased and create vibration.

Production security

- It is important to select the correct insert size, insert shape and geometry and insert nose radius to achieve good chip flow.
  - Select largest possible point angle on the insert for strength and economy.
  - Select largest possible nose radius for insert strength.
  - Select a smaller nose radius if there is a tendency for vibration.

Stability

- Stability is the key factor for successful metal cutting, affecting machining costs and productivity.

- Make sure that any unnecessary play, overhang, weakness, etc., has been eliminated and that correct types and sizes of tools are employed for the job.

L = cutting edge length (insert size)
RE = nose radius
Insert handling

Inserts are placed in segregated packages in order to prevent insert to insert contact, as this may damage the carbide with micro fracturing and/or chipping. Which may reduce insert performance and life. It’s recommended that inserts remain in their original packaging until they are applied in the machining process.

Summary of maintenance checklist

- Check tool wear and shims for damage.
- Make sure insert seat is clean.
- Make sure of correct insert location.
- Make sure correct keys and drivers are used.
- Insert screws should be correctly tightened.
- Lubricate screws before tool assembly.
- Make sure contact faces are clean and undamaged on tools, holding tools and machine spindles.
- Make sure boring bars are clamped well and that holders are undamaged at the end.
- A well organized, maintained and documented tool inventory is a production cost saver.
- Stability is always a critical factor in any metal cutting operation.
Machining economy

How to improve machining economy
Machining economy

Doing more machining in the same production time

Productivity definition

The value of output produced divided by the value of input or resources.

= Output / Input

Attack the productivity gap

In all industrial operations, the cost of running the operation, e.g. for labor, raw material, equipment, etc., is increasing at a faster rate than the price of the goods that are sold. In order to bridge that gap, one needs to continuously increase efficiency, resulting in higher productivity. Bridging this gap is the only way to stay competitive and ultimately to stay in business.

Source: Mechanical Industry in OECD.
Maximizing productivity

The three main machining parameters, cutting speed, feed, and depth of cut, have an effect on tool life. The depth of cut has the smallest effect followed by the feed rate. Cutting speed has the largest effect by far on insert tool life.

Productivity “Q” is measured as the amount of material removed in a fixed time period, cm³/min (inch³/min).

Turning

\[ Q = v_c \times a_p \times f_n \]

Inch

\[ Q = v_c \times a_p \times f_n \times 12 \]

Milling

\[ Q = a_p \times a_e \times v_f \times \frac{1000}{1200} \]

Inch

\[ Q = a_p \times a_e \times v_f \]
Maximizing productivity – examples

Metal removal rates for a fixed depth of cut of 3.0 mm (.118 inch) using:

Low alloy steel, MC P2

Hardness, HB 180

Insert: CNMG 432-PM 4225 (CNMG 120408-PM 4225)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>$a_p$, mm (inch)</th>
<th>3.0 (118)</th>
<th>3.0 (118)</th>
<th>3.0 (118)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$f_n$, mm/r (inch/r)</td>
<td>0.15 (.006)</td>
<td>0.3 (.012)</td>
<td>0.5 (.020)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$v_c$, m/min (ft/min)</td>
<td>425 (1394)</td>
<td>345 (1132)</td>
<td>275 (902)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$Q$, cm³/min (inch³/min)</td>
<td>191 (12)</td>
<td>310 (19)</td>
<td>412* (25)*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Slowest cutting speed with the highest feed = highest productivity

Using a trigon W-style insert, versus a C-style double-sided or single-sided insert

Low alloy steel, MC P2

Hardness, HB 180

Trigon shape

Insert: double-sided for medium machining.

- No of passes / cutting depth, $a_p$: 3/4 mm (.118/.157 inch)
- Machining time, $T_c$: 22 seconds

Rhombic shape

Insert: double sided for medium machining.

- No of passes / cutting depth, $a_p$: 3/5 mm (.118/.197 inch)
- Machining time, $T_c$: 16 seconds

Insert: Single sided for rough machining.

- No of passes / cutting depth, $a_p$: 2/7.5 mm (.079/.295 inch)
- Machining time, $T_c$: 8 seconds
Value adding time

Cutting time = 60% x 50% x 80% = 24%

Machining economy

• **Variable costs**
  Costs incurred only during production:
  - cutting tools, consumables (3%)
  - workpiece materials (17%).

• **Fixed costs**
  Costs which exist even when not in production:
  - machine and tool holders (27%)
  - labor (31%)
  - buildings, administration, etc. (22%).
Machine tool utilization

Cost, tool life or productivity

The cost of the tooling, an easily measured value, is always under price or discount pressure, but even when the price is reduced by 30% it only influences the component cost by 1%.

We have a similar result of a 1% cost saving when tool life is increased by 50%.

Increasing the cutting data by only 20% will dramatically reduce component costs and lead to a 15% component saving.

• Decreased cost:
  A 30% decrease in price only reduces total cost per component by 1%.

• Increased tool life:
  A 50% increase in tool life only reduces total cost per component by 1%.

• Increased cutting data:
  A 20% increase in cutting data reduces total cost per component by more than 15%.
Machine tool utilization

Cost, tool life or productivity

Example:
Shop spends $10,000 to make 1000 parts.
Machine cost is $10.00 per part.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variable</th>
<th>Today</th>
<th>Lower price</th>
<th>Tool life</th>
<th>Increase cutting data</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tooling</td>
<td>$ .30</td>
<td>$ .21</td>
<td>$ .20</td>
<td>$ .45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Material</td>
<td>$ 1.70</td>
<td>$ 1.70</td>
<td>$ 1.70</td>
<td>$ 1.70</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fixed

- Machinery    | $ 2.70| $ 2.70      | $ 2.70   | $ 2.16                |
- Labor        | $ 3.10| $ 3.10      | $ 3.10   | $ 2.48                |
- Building     | $ 2.20| $ 2.20      | $ 2.20   | $ 1.76                |

Cost per part | $ 10.00| $ 9.91      | $ 9.90   | $ 8.55                |

Savings       | 1%    | 1%          | 15%      |
Machining economy

Cutting data and cost

• Cutting speed has no effect on fixed costs.
• As cutting speed increases more parts are produced per hour and therefore cost per part is reduced.
• As cutting speed increases more tools are used and therefore cost per part increases.

If we add all costs together we will get the curve of total Production cost.

1. As speed increases the Parts per hour increase until we reach a point where we are spending a disproportionate amount of time changing tools and production rate will start to decrease.

2. The lowest point on the Production cost curve corresponds to the economic cutting speed.

3. The highest point on the Production cost curve corresponds to the maximum cutting speed.

The speed between these two points is the High Efficiency Range, which is where we should be trying to operate.
Base for cutting data recommendations

Compensation of cutting speed for increased tool life or higher metal removal

**Tool life**
- All recommended cutting data is based on 15 minutes of tool life.
- Looking at the chart below 15 min tool life = a factor of 1.0.
- Multiple the factor for desired minutes by the recommended cutting speed.

**Increase tool life (example)**
- Our Recommended cutting data is 225 m/min (738 ft/min).
- To increase tool life by 30%, we look at the factor for 20 minutes of tool life = 0.93.
- Multiple the factor for desired minutes by the recommended cutting speed.
- 225 m/min x 0.93 = 209 m/min (738 ft/min x 0.93 = 686 ft/min).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tool life (min)</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>20</th>
<th>25</th>
<th>30</th>
<th>45</th>
<th>60</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Correction factor</td>
<td>1.11</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>0.93</td>
<td>0.88</td>
<td>0.84</td>
<td>0.75</td>
<td>0.70</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Higher metal removal rate**
- Recommended cutting data is based on 15 minutes of tool life.
- To obtain higher metal removal rates, we would move in the opposite direction on the chart. Decreasing the minutes of tool life to gain higher metal removal.
- Multiple the factor for desired minutes by the recommended cutting speed.

**Higher metal removal rate (example)**
- The Recommended cutting data is 225 m/min (738 ft/min).
- To increase metal removal by 10%, we look at the factor for 10 minutes = 1.11.
- Multiple the factor for desired minutes by the recommended cutting speed.
- 225 m/min x 1.11 = 250 m/min (738 ft/min x 1.11 = 819 ft/min).
Compensation of cutting speed for differences in material hardness

Hardness

- Cutting speed recommendations are based on the material reference and their respective hardness.
- Metal material hardness is measured in Hardness Brinell (HB) or Hardness Rockwell “C” scale (HRC) example: ISO/ANSI P = 180 HB, ISO/ANSI H = 60 HRC.
- The hardness (HB) column is the base hardness for each material group and cutting speeds are recommended for this base hardness (note: your material could be harder/softer).
- Each ISO/ANSI material group is associated with a multiplying factor for reduced/increased hardness of material (example ISO/ANSI P = 180 HB and has a factor of 1.0).
- Use the chart below for correction factors and multiply by the recommended cutting speed for the chosen insert grade.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ISO/ANSI</th>
<th>MC(1)</th>
<th>HB(2)</th>
<th>Reduced hardness</th>
<th>Increased hardness</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>P2</td>
<td>HB 180</td>
<td>1.44 1.25 1.11 1.00</td>
<td>0.91 0.84 0.77 0.72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>M1</td>
<td>HB 180</td>
<td>1.42 1.24 1.11 1.00</td>
<td>0.91 0.84 0.78 0.73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K</td>
<td>K2</td>
<td>HB 220</td>
<td>1.21 1.13 1.06 1.00</td>
<td>0.95 0.90 0.86 0.82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K</td>
<td>K3</td>
<td>HB 250</td>
<td>1.33 1.21 1.09 1.00</td>
<td>0.91 0.84 0.75 0.70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>HB 75</td>
<td>1.05 1.00</td>
<td>0.95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>S2</td>
<td>HB 350</td>
<td>1.12 1.00</td>
<td>0.89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>H1</td>
<td>HRC(3)60</td>
<td>1.07 1.00</td>
<td>0.97</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1) MC = material classification code
2) HB = Hardness Brinell
3) HRC = Hardness Rockwell
## Example of Conversion table for hardness scale

Material specifications maybe given in different forms, example: HB, HRC, Tensile Strength or Specific Cutting forces.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tensile strength N/mm²</th>
<th>Vickers HV</th>
<th>Brinell HB</th>
<th>Rockwell HRC</th>
<th>Rockwell HRB</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>255</td>
<td>36,975</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>76.0</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>270</td>
<td>39,150</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>80.7</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>285</td>
<td>41,325</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>85.5</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>305</td>
<td>44,225</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>90.2</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>320</td>
<td>46,400</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>95.0</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>350</td>
<td>50,750</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>105</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>385</td>
<td>55,825</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>114</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>415</td>
<td>60,175</td>
<td>130</td>
<td>124</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>450</td>
<td>65,250</td>
<td>140</td>
<td>133</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>480</td>
<td>69,600</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>143</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>510</td>
<td>73,950</td>
<td>160</td>
<td>152</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>545</td>
<td>79,025</td>
<td>170</td>
<td>162</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>575</td>
<td>83,375</td>
<td>180</td>
<td>171</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>610</td>
<td>88,450</td>
<td>190</td>
<td>181</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>640</td>
<td>92,800</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>190</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>660</td>
<td>95,700</td>
<td>205</td>
<td>195</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>675</td>
<td>97,875</td>
<td>210</td>
<td>199</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>690</td>
<td>100,050</td>
<td>215</td>
<td>204</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>705</td>
<td>102,225</td>
<td>220</td>
<td>209</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>720</td>
<td>104,400</td>
<td>225</td>
<td>214</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>740</td>
<td>107,300</td>
<td>230</td>
<td>219</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>770</td>
<td>111,650</td>
<td>240</td>
<td>228</td>
<td>20.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>800</td>
<td>116,000</td>
<td>250</td>
<td>238</td>
<td>22.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>820</td>
<td>118,900</td>
<td>255</td>
<td>242</td>
<td>23.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>835</td>
<td>121,075</td>
<td>260</td>
<td>247</td>
<td>24.0 (101)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>850</td>
<td>123,250</td>
<td>265</td>
<td>252</td>
<td>24.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>865</td>
<td>125,425</td>
<td>270</td>
<td>257</td>
<td>25.6 (102)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>900</td>
<td>130,500</td>
<td>280</td>
<td>266</td>
<td>27.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>930</td>
<td>134,850</td>
<td>290</td>
<td>276</td>
<td>28.5 (105)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>950</td>
<td>137,750</td>
<td>295</td>
<td>280</td>
<td>29.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>965</td>
<td>139,925</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>285</td>
<td>29.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>995</td>
<td>144,275</td>
<td>310</td>
<td>295</td>
<td>31.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Customer workpiece material (match to information on chart)

Tensile strength = 950 N/mm²
(137,750 lbs/inch²)

HB = 280, HRC = 29.2
Example of conversion table, finding the factor for hardness

Diagram form for P, M and K

Specific cutting forces N/mm² (lbs/in²)
Hardness Brinell (HB)

Customer workpiece material
4140 Steel
Tensile strength = 950 N/mm²
(137,786 lbs/inch²)
HB = 280, HRC = 29.2

Calculating hardness factor = 0.67
Compensation of cutting speed for differences in material hardness

Example:
• Recommended cutting data is 415 m/min (1360 ft/min) for P Steel material 180 HB.
• Customer workpiece material = 280 HB P Steel material.
• Calculating hardness factor, Customer material = 280 HB – Material reference 180 HB = +100 HB in increased hardness (factor = 0.67).
• Use the factor to recalculate cutting speed for the material hardness 415 m/min x 0.67 = 278 m/min (1360 ft/min x 0.67 = 911 ft/min).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ISO/ANSI</th>
<th>MC(1)</th>
<th>HB(2)</th>
<th>Reduced hardness</th>
<th>Increased hardness</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>P2</td>
<td>HB 180</td>
<td>1.44 1.25 1.11 1.0</td>
<td>0.91 0.84 0.77 0.72 0.67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>M1</td>
<td>HB 180</td>
<td>1.42 1.24 1.11 1.0</td>
<td>0.91 0.84 0.78 0.73 0.68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K</td>
<td>K2</td>
<td>HB 220</td>
<td>1.21 1.13 1.06 1.0</td>
<td>0.95 0.90 0.86 0.82 0.79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>K3</td>
<td>HB 250</td>
<td>1.33 1.21 1.09 1.0</td>
<td>0.91 0.84 0.75 0.70 0.65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>HB 75</td>
<td>1.05 1.0</td>
<td>0.95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>S2</td>
<td>HB 350</td>
<td>1.12 1.0</td>
<td>0.89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>H1</td>
<td>HRC(3)60</td>
<td>1.07 1.0</td>
<td>0.97</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1) MC = material classification code
2) HB = Hardness Brinell
3) HRC = Hardness Rockwell
Compensation of cutting speed and feed data for Turning

How to use the diagram

This diagram shows a simple method of adjusting the starting values for cutting speed and feed recommendations.

Recommended cutting data for inserts are based on 15 minutes of tool life (in cut time), as well as maintaining chip formation and this will remain the same with the values taken from this diagram.

**Example 1: Productivity increase**

- Increasing the feed rate by 0.15 (.006") to give a new starting value of 0.45 mm/r (.018 in/r).
- Calculate the new cutting speed of -12% from the diagram by intersecting feed with Start value line and cutting speed axis.
- New cutting data = 0.45 mm/r (.018 in/r) and 415 x .88 = 365 m/min (1360 x .88 = 1197 ft/min) Metal removal +30%.

**Example 2: Better Surface finish**

- Increasing the cutting speed by 15% to give a new starting value of 477 m/min (1564 ft/min).
- Calculate the new cutting feed of -0.175 (-.0075") from the diagram by intersecting speed with Start value line and feed axis.
- New cutting data = 477 m/min (1564 ft/min) and 0.3 – 0.175 = 0.125 mm/r (.012" - .0075" = .0045 in/r) improved Surface finish.
How can you improve productivity?

Things to consider

- Identify material hardness HB, Specific cutting forces or Tensile strength N/mm² (lbs/inch²).
- Choose the correct geometry.
- Choose the correct grade.
- Use given cutting data values, compensate for material hardness factor.
- Create a stable environment for component and tools.

Machining tips for improved tool life

- Identify material hardness HB, Specific cutting forces or Tensile strength N/mm² (lbs/inch²).
- Use given cutting data values, compensate for material hardness factor.
- Create a stable environment for component and tools.
- Choose the right combination of nose radius and geometry.
- Use climb milling over conventional, when ever possible.
- Make use of all available insert corners
- Consider chamfering operations with worn inserts.

Good stability = Successful metal cutting
ISO 13399
The industry standard

ISO 13399 - The industry standard
ISO 13399 - The industry standard

Variations in terminology among cutting tool suppliers make collection and transfer of information complex. At the same time, more and more advanced functionality in modern manufacturing systems rely on access to relevant and exact information.

A common language is valuable from a system to system point of view, but will also make life easier for users. ISO 13399 is the international standard simplifying exchange of data for cutting tools and is a globally recognized way of describing cutting tool data.

ISO 13399 - What it means for the industry

The international standard defines attributes of the tool, for example functional length, cutting diameter, maximum depth of cut in a standard way. Each tool is defined by the standardized parameters.

EDMIL (end mill)

DCX (cutting diameter maximum)

LF (functional length)

ZYL-01 (straight shank -no features)

APMX (depth of cut maximum)

DMM (shank diameter)

ISO 13399 - The industry standard

EDMIL

LF

ZYL-01

DCX

APMX

DMM
ISO 13399 - What it means for the industry

When the industry share the same parameters and definitions, communicating tool information between software systems becomes very straightforward. In the picture you see that three different suppliers call a diameter D3, DC and D respectively. It creates a lot of confusion for programmers. In the ISO 13399 standard, the diameter will always be named DCX.

A full list of parameters is available on www.sandvik.coromant.com
Formulas & definitions

Glossary of terms  
Turning  
Milling  
Drilling  
Boring

E-learning

E-learning and app information  

\[ v_f = n \times f_z \times z_n \]

\[ n = \frac{v_c \times 10^3}{\pi \times D_m} \]

\[ v_c = \frac{\pi \times D_m \times n}{10^3} \]
vc = \frac{\pi \times D_m \times n}{1000}

\textit{a_e} (Working engagement) working engagement of the cutting tool with the workpiece, measured in a direction parallel to the plane Pfe (Primary motion/Resultant cutting direction) and perpendicular to the direction of feed motion. Measured in millimeters (mm) or inches.

\textit{a_p} (Cutting depth) cutting width perpendicular to direction of feed motion. Note: When drilling, radial cutting depth is denoted with \textit{a_p}, the same symbol as for axial cutting depth/cutting width when milling. Measured in millimeters (mm) or inches.

\textit{DC} (Cutting diameter) diameter of a circle created by a cutting reference point revolving around the tool axis of a rotating tool item. Note: The diameter refers to the machined peripheral surface. Measured in millimeters (mm) or inches.

\textit{D_{cap}} (Cutting diameter at depth of cut) diameter at the distance \textit{a_p} from the plane Pfe through point PK, measured in base plane 1 (Bp1). Measured in millimeters (mm) or inches.

\textit{D_{m}} (Machined diameter) machined diameter of the workpiece. Measured in millimeters (mm) or inches.

\textit{f_z} (Feed per tooth) the transportation of an effective cutting edge (Z_e) in the direction of feed motion for rotation center of the tool which moves through the workpiece as the tool makes one complete revolution. In the case of turning, the distance is measured as the workpiece makes one complete revolution. Measured in mm/tooth or inches/tooth.

\textit{h_{max}} (Maximum chip thickness) is the maximum thickness of the non-deformed chip at the right angles of the cutting edge, and it is influenced by the radial engagement, edge preparation of the insert and feed per tooth. Keep in mind, however, that different radial widths of cut and different entering (lead) angles require feed rate adjustments to maintain proper chip thickness. Measured in millimeters (mm) or inches.

\textit{h_{m}} (Average chip thickness) is the average thickness of the non-deformed chip at the right angles of the cutting edge, and it is influenced by the radial engagement, edge preparation of the insert and feed per tooth. Keep in mind, however, that different radial widths of cut and different entering (lead) angles require feed rate adjustments to maintain proper chip thickness. Measured in millimeters (mm) or inches.

\textit{KAPR} (Entering angle) Angle between the cutting edge plane and the tool feed plane measured in a plane parallel the xy – plane.

\textit{k_c} (Specific cutting force) cutting force/area for a given chip thickness in tangential direction. (Specific cutting force coefficient for material and tool combination) and is measured in newton/square millimeters (N/mm^2) and pounds/square inch (lbs/in^2).

\textit{k_{c1}} (Specific cutting force coefficient) cutting force/area for a chip thickness of 1 mm (.0394”) in tangential direction. (Material constant: specific cutting force coefficient. Traditionally named \textit{k_c} 1.1) and is measured in newton/square millimeters (N/mm^2) and pounds/square inch (lbs/in^2).
Formulas and definitions

\[ l_m = \text{(Machined length)} \]
length of cutting engagement over all passes. Measured in millimeters (mm) or inches.

\[ M_c = \text{(Rise in specific cutting force)} \]
rise in specific force as a function of reduced chip thickness. Can be found in the work material property from cutting data tables and is measured as a ratio. Is also closely associated with specific cutting force coefficient \((k_c)\).

\[ n = \text{(Spindle speed)} \]
frequency of the spindle rotation. Measured in revolutions/minute (rpm).

\[ P_c = \text{(Cutting power)} \]
cutting power generated by the removal of chips. Measured in kilowatts (kW) and/or horsepower (Hp)

\[ \text{PSIR (Lead angle)} \]
angle between the cutting edge plane and a plane perpendicular to the tool feed plane measured in a plane parallel the \(xz\) plane.

\[ Q = \text{(Material removal rate)} \]
defined as the volume of material removed divided by the machining time. Another way to define \(Q\) is to imagine an “instantaneous” material removal rate as the rate at which the cross-section area of material being removed moves through the work piece. It is measured in cubic centimeters/minute (cm\(^3\)/min) and cubic inches/minute (in\(^3\)/min).

\[ T_c = \text{(Cutting time total)} \]
period of time for cutting engagement over all passes. Measured in minutes.

\[ v_c = \text{(Cutting speed)} \]
the instantaneous velocity of the cutting motion of a selected point on the cutting edge relative to the workpiece. Measured in surface meter/minute or feet/minute.

\[ v_t = \text{(Table feed / Penetration rate)} \]
the distance, in millimeters or inches, that a cutting tool moves through the workpiece in one minute. Measured in mm/minute or inches/minute.

\[ \gamma_0 = \text{(effective rake angle)} \]
The specific force gets reduced by one percent for each degree of rake angle. Measured in degrees.

\[ Z_e = \text{(effective cutting edge count)} \]
number of cutting edges that are effective around the tool item.

\[ Z_m = \text{(mounted insert count)} \]
number of cutting edges of the tool item axis.
Formulas and definitions for turning - METRIC

Cutting speed, m/min

\[ v_c = \frac{\pi \times D_m \times n}{1000} \]

Spindle speed, rpm

\[ n = \frac{v_c \times 1000}{\pi \times D_m} \]

Machining time, min

\[ T_c = \frac{l_m}{f_n \times n} \]

Metal removal rate, cm³/min

\[ Q = v_c \times a_p \times f_n \]

Specific cutting forces

\[ k_c = k_{c1} \times \left( \frac{1}{h_m} \right) \left( \frac{m_c}{1 - \frac{\gamma_0}{100}} \right) \]

Average chip thickness

\[ h_m = f_n \times \sin \text{KAPR} \]

Net power, kW

\[ P_c = \frac{v_c \times a_p \times f_n \times k_c}{60 \times 10^3} \]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Designation/definition</th>
<th>Unit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(D_m)</td>
<td>Machined diameter</td>
<td>mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(f_n)</td>
<td>Feed per revolution</td>
<td>mm/r</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a_p)</td>
<td>Cutting depth</td>
<td>mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(v_c)</td>
<td>Cutting speed</td>
<td>m/min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(n)</td>
<td>Spindle speed</td>
<td>rpm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(P_c)</td>
<td>Net power</td>
<td>kW</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Q)</td>
<td>Metal removal rate</td>
<td>cm³/min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(h_m)</td>
<td>Average chip thickness</td>
<td>mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(h_{ex})</td>
<td>Maximum chip thickness</td>
<td>mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(T_c)</td>
<td>Period of engagement</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(l_m)</td>
<td>Machined length</td>
<td>mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(k_c)</td>
<td>Specific cutting force</td>
<td>N/mm²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KAPR</td>
<td>Entering angle</td>
<td>degree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\gamma_0)</td>
<td>Effective rake angle</td>
<td>degree</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Formulas and definitions for turning - INCH

Cutting speed, ft/min

\[ v_c = \frac{\pi \times D_m \times n}{12} \]

Spindle speed, rpm

\[ n = \frac{v_c \times 12}{\pi \times D_m} \]

Machining time, min

\[ T_c = \frac{l_m}{f_n \times n} \]

Metal removal rate, inch³/min

\[ Q = v_c \times a_p \times f_n \times 12 \]

Specific cutting forces

\[ k_c = k_{c1} \times \left( \frac{0.0394}{h_m} \right)^{m_c} \times \left( 1 - \frac{\gamma_0}{100} \right) \]

Average chip thickness

\[ h_m = f_n \times \sin \text{KAPR} \]

Net power, HP

\[ P_c = \frac{v_c \times a_p \times f_n \times k_c}{33 \times 10^3} \]
Formulas and definitions for milling - METRIC

Table feed, mm/min

\[ v_f = f_z \times n \times z_c \]

Cutting speed, m/min

\[ v_c = \frac{\pi \times D_{\text{cap}} \times n}{1000} \]

Spindle speed, r/min

\[ n = \frac{v_c \times 1000}{\pi \times D_{\text{cap}}} \]

Feed per tooth, mm

\[ f_z = \frac{v_f}{n \times z_c} \]

Feed per revolution, mm/rev

\[ f_n = \frac{v_f}{n} \]

Metal removal rate, cm³/min

\[ Q = \frac{a_p \times a_e \times v_f}{1000} \]

Net power, kW

\[ P_c = \frac{a_e \times a_p \times v_f \times k_c}{60 \times 10^6} \]

Torque, Nm

\[ M_c = \frac{P_c \times 30 \times 10^3}{\pi \times n} \]

Specific cutting forces

\[ k_c = k_{c1} \times \left( \frac{1}{h_m} \right)^{m_c} \times \left( 1 - \frac{\gamma_0}{100} \right) \]
Formulas and definitions for milling - INCH

Table feed, inch/min

\[ v_f = f_z \times n \times z_c \]

Cutting speed, ft/min

\[ v_c = \frac{\pi \times D_{\text{cap}} \times n}{12} \]

Spindle speed, rpm

\[ n = \frac{v_c \times 12}{\pi \times D_{\text{cap}}} \]

Feed per tooth, inch

\[ f_z = \frac{v_f}{n \times z_c} \]

Feed per revolution, inch/rev

\[ f_n = \frac{v_f}{n} \]

Metal removal rate, inch\(^3\)/min

\[ Q = a_p \times a_e \times v_f \]

Net power, HP

\[ P_c = \frac{a_e \times a_p \times v_f \times k_c}{396 \times 10^3} \]

Torque, lbf ft

\[ M_c = \frac{P_c \times 16501}{\pi \times n} \]

Specific cutting forces

\[ k_c = k_{c1} \times \left( \frac{0.039}{h_m} \right)^m_c \times \left( 1 - \frac{\gamma_0}{100} \right) \]
Formulas and definitions for drilling - METRIC

Penetration rate, mm/min

\[ v_f = f_n \times n \]

Cutting speed, m/min

\[ v_c = \frac{\pi \times DC \times n}{1000} \]

Spindle speed, r/min

\[ n = \frac{v_c \times 1000}{\pi \times DC} \]

Feed force, N

\[ F_f \approx 0.5 \times k_c \times \frac{DC}{2} \times f_n \times \sin \text{KAPR} \]

Metal removal rate, cm³/min

\[ Q = \frac{v_c \times DC \times f_n}{4} \]

Net power, kW

\[ P_c = \frac{v_c \times DC \times f_n \times k_c}{240 \times 10^3} \]

Torque, Nm

\[ M_c = \frac{P_c \times 30 \times 10^3}{\pi \times n} \]
Formulas and definitions for drilling - INCH

Penetration rate, inch/min

\[ v_f = f_n \times n \]

Cutting speed, ft/min

\[ v_c = \frac{\pi \times DC \times n}{12} \]

Spindle speed, rpm

\[ n = \frac{v_c \times 12}{\pi \times DC} \]

Feed force, N

\[ F_f \approx 0.5 \times k_c \times \frac{DC}{2} \times f_n \times \sin \text{PSIR} \]

*Note: DC needs to be converted into millimeters*

Metal removal rate, inch³/min

\[ Q = v_c \times DC \times f_n \times 3 \]

Net power, HP

\[ P_c = \frac{v_c \times DC \times f_n \times k_c}{132 \times 10^3} \]

Torque, lbf ft

\[ M_c = \frac{P_c \times 16501}{\pi \times n} \]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Designation/definition</th>
<th>Unit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DC</td>
<td>Drill diameter</td>
<td>inch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( f_n )</td>
<td>Feed per revolution</td>
<td>inch/r</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( n )</td>
<td>Spindle speed</td>
<td>rpm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( v_c )</td>
<td>Cutting speed</td>
<td>ft/min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( v_f )</td>
<td>Penetration rate</td>
<td>inch/min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( F_f )</td>
<td>Feed force</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( k_c )</td>
<td>Specific cutting force</td>
<td>lbs/inch²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( M_c )</td>
<td>Torque</td>
<td>lbf ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( P_c )</td>
<td>Net power</td>
<td>HP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( Q )</td>
<td>Metal removal rate</td>
<td>inch³/min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{PSIR} )</td>
<td>Lead angle</td>
<td>degree</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Formulas and definitions for boring - METRIC

Penetration rate, mm/min

\[ v_f = f_n \times n \]

Cutting speed, m/min

\[ v_c = \frac{\pi \times DC \times n}{1000} \]

Spindle speed, r/min

\[ n = \frac{v_c \times 1000}{\pi \times DC} \]

Feed per revolution, mm/r

\[ f_n = z_c \times f_z \]

Metal removal rate, cm³/min

\[ Q = \frac{v_c \times DC \times f_n}{4} \]

Net power, kW

\[ P_c = \frac{v_c \times a_p \times f_n \times k_c}{60 \times 10^3} \left(1 - \frac{a_p}{DC}\right) \]

Torque, Nm

\[ M_c = \frac{P_c \times 30 \times 10^3}{\pi \times n} \]

Feed force, N

\[ F_f \approx 0.5 \times k_c \times a_p \times f_n \times \sin KAPR \]
Formulas and definitions for boring - INCH

Penetration rate, inch/min

\[ v_t = f_n \times n \]

Cutting speed, ft/min

\[ v_c = \frac{\pi \times DC \times n}{12} \]

Spindle speed, rpm

\[ n = \frac{v_c \times 12}{\pi \times DC} \]

Feed per revolution, inch/rev

\[ f_n = z_c \times f_z \]

Metal removal rate, inch³/min

\[ Q = v_c \times DC \times f_n \times 3 \]

Net power, HP

\[ P_c = \frac{v_c \times a_p \times f_n \times k_c}{132 \times 10^3} \left( 1 - \frac{a_p}{DC} \right) \]

Torque, lbf ft

\[ M_c = \frac{P_c \times 16501}{\pi \times n} \]

Feed force, N

\[ F_f \approx 0.5 \times k_c \times a_p \times f_n \times \sin KAPR \]
University level online training

The Metal Cutting Technology e-learning is the ideal complement to a classroom education - or the perfect solution to develop new skills in whatever location you may be. Learn the fundamentals of Metal Cutting Technology through the extensive 75 courses, covering most application areas of metal cutting. Save your progress and track your achievements as you advance.

Register at metalcuttingknowledge.com and start your free training.

Support in the palm of your hand

Learning metal cutting requires the mindset of an engineer and strong support along the way. Sandvik Coromant provides several advanced and useful calculators and apps for your mobile devices, free of charge.

Find the support you need on sandvik.coromant.com/apps